ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL



ŠKODA Fabia


6V0012720AF

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are given in this Owner's Manual.

For vehicles with Infotainment, several functions and vehicle systems can be controlled using Infotainment .

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment Owner's Manual carefully as well. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

Please always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO

6V0012720AF

Table of Contents

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars 4

On-board literature 6

Notes 7

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information 8

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 10
- General information 10
- Correct and safe seated position 10

Seat belts 13
- Wearing seat belts 13
- Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners 15

Airbag system 16
- Description of the airbag system 16
- Airbag deactivation 18

Transporting children safely 20
- Child seat 20
- Fastening systems 23

Operation

cockpit 26
- Overview 25

Instruments and warning lights 27
- Instrument cluster 27
- Warning lights 28

Information system 36
- Driver information system 36
- Operation of the information system 38
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 38
- MAXI DOT display 40
- Service interval display 41
- SmartGate 42

Unlocking and opening 44
- Unlocking and locking 44
- Anti-theft alarm system 49
- Tailgate 50
- window operation 50

Lights and visibility 53
- Lights 53
- Interior lighting 57
- Visibility 58
- Windscreen wipers and washers 59
- Rear view mirror 61

Seats and headrests 62
- Front seats 62
- Rear seats 63
- Headrests 64
- Front seat heater 65

Useful features 66
- Interior fittings 66
- Tablet holder 73

Transport of cargo 75
- Luggage compartment and transporting objects 75
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 81
- Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment 82
- Transportation on the roof rack 84

Heating and ventilation 85
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 85

Driving

Starting-off and driving 90
- Starting and stopping the engine 90
- START-STOPsystem 92
- Brakes and Parking 93
- Manual gear shifting and pedals 95
- Automatic transmission 96
- Running in and economical driving 98
- Avoiding damage to your vehicle 99

Assist systems 100
- General information 100
- Braking and stabilisation systems 101
- Parking aid (ParkPilot) 103
- Reversing camera 105
- Cruise Control System 107
- Speed limiter 108
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 110
- Front Assist 114
- Fatigue detection 116
- Tyre pressure monitoring 117

Towing device and trailer 119
- Hitch 119
- Using hitch 123

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 127
- Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 127
- Service intervals 129
- Cleaning and care 131

Inspecting and replenishing 135
- Fuel 135
- Engine compartment 137
- Engine oil 139
- Coolant 140

Brake fluid 142
Vehicle battery 142

Wheels 145
Wheels and tyres 145
Operating in winter conditions 148

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 149
Emergency equipment 149
Changing a wheel 151
Breakdown kit 154
Jump-starting 156
Towing the vehicle 157
Remote control - change battery 159
Emergency unlocking / locking of doors 159
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 161

Fuses and light bulbs 162
Fuses 162
Bulbs 165

Technical data

Technical data 173
Basic vehicle data 173
Vehicle-specific details per engine type 178

Index

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will provide the following services.
- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paint work defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only corrosion of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the new car is handed over to the initial purchaser by the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted down by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner's Manual for your vehicle » *in the section on the documentation of the vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

A prerequisite for carrying out work under the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and technically correct manner and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions when making a claim on the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that were not installed and/or delivered ex-factory.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following.
- Unauthorised use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorised modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with instructions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).

[1] Due to the requirements of the country-specific regulations which are generally binding, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle, whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that he/she is not the cause of the damage.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

If your vehicle breaks down on the road due to an unexpected failure, services can be provided under the mobility guarantee to keep you moving, which include the following services: Breakdown assistance at the roadside and towing to ŠKODA service partners, technical assistance on the phone or on-site commissioning.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage in place for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a supplementary agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion described above are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

On-board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** in the on-board literature. Depending on the equipment installed, the on-board literature may also contain the**Infotainment Owner's Manual.**

Owner´s Manual
These Owner´s Manual apply to all **body versions** of the vehicle and all related **models** as well as for all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment versions** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The range of equipment installed in your vehicle depends on the purchase contract for the vehicle. If you have any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this Owner's Manual are for illustration purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Each time, therefore, any changes to the vehicle occur, the scope of delivery may change in terms of its equipment and technology. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Infotainment Owner's Manual
The Infotainment Owner's Manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Online user manuals



Fig. 1
On-board literature online on the ŠKODA web pages

To**display user manuals online** proceed as follows.

1. Read the QR-Code » Fig. 1 using the corresponding application in your external device (e.g. Telephone, tablet) **or** enter the following address in your web browser.
   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals
   The web page with a model overview of the ŠKODAbrand is opened.
2. Select the desired model - a menu for the user manuals is displayed.
3. Select the construction period as well as the language.
4. Select one of the following manual types.
   - File in **pdf**format
   - **On-line**version of the manual
   - Variant for the mobile device - **My ŠKODA App application**

Notes

Terms used

"Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"Press" - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

"Hold" - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Explanation of symbols

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Registered trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display
- → Marker to the next operation step

WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information

Structure of the Owner's Manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Operating instructions) - the title of the section is shown down in the left-hand corner
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Checking and refilling) - the title of the main chapter is shown down in the right-hand corner
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Engine oil)
      - 🕮 **Introductory information** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content and, where appropriate, information relevant to the whole chapter
      - **Module** (e.g. Checking and refilling)

Information Search
When searching for information in the Owner´s Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the display on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided nothing to the contrary is stated.

Help in an emergency
In case of breakdown, the breakdown service contact information required can be found in the following places.

- ▸ Contact details for the ŠKODA Partner (e.g. window sticker)
- ▸ Infotainment (Telephone - breakdown service / information service menu)
- ▸ ŠKODA mobile application
- ▸ ŠKODA web pages

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
MSR	Engine drag torque control
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharger and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before every journey ____ 10
Driving safety ____ 10

In this section of the instructions you will find important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the subsequent sections of this Owner's Manual. Therefore, the Owner's Manual should always be kept in the vehicle.

Before every journey

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the lights and turn signal lights are functioning correctly.
- Check the wiper function and the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and luggage compartment lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children using a suitable child seat » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position » page 10, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Driving safety

For safety in traffic, the following precautions must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol, drugs or similar).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct seating position for the driver ____ 11
Adjusting the steering wheel position ____ 11
Correct seating position for the front passenger ____ 12
Correct seating position for the passengers in the rear seats ____ 12

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to one side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 20, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

The correct seating position for the driver

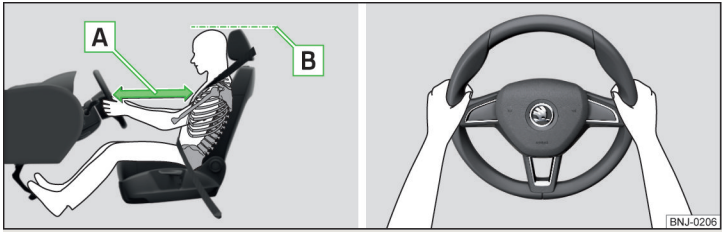


Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following settings.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm» Fig. 2 - A.

✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests)» Fig. 2 - B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 13, *Wearing seat belts*.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the steering wheel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, you could sustain serious injury to the arms, hands and head if the airbag is activated.
- Ensure there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get behind the pedals while driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.

› Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction 3.

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, but only when the vehicle is stationary!
- The safety lever must always be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – There is a risk of accident!

Correct seating position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head» Fig. 2 *on page 11* - B (not for seats with integrated headrest).

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 13.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the dash panel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seating position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

For the safety of the passengers in the rear seats, and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 11*-B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 13, *Wearing seat belts*.

Seat belts

Wearing seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct routing of seat belt 14
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 14

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce kinetic energy to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting a child the following instructions must be observed » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten seat belts before every journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 10, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear, otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 63.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 134.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If damage to the parts of the seat belt system (e.g. the strap, the belt connectors, the retractor, the lock or similar) are detected, the seat belt in question must be replaced by a specialist immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subject to stress in an accident should be replaced by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Correct routing of seat belt

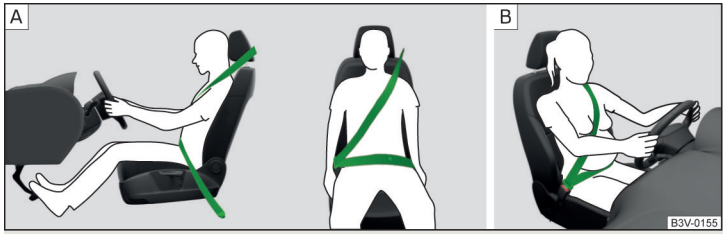


Fig. 4 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

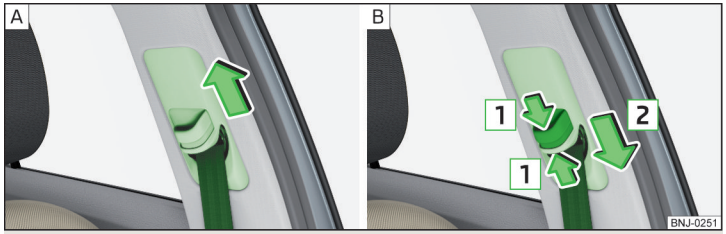


Fig. 5 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder belt** should be positioned approximately over the middle of your shoulder (under no circumstances across your neck) and lie flush to the chest» Fig. 4 - A.

The **lower part of the belt** should run across the pelvis (it should not lie on top of the stomach) and must always fit snugly» Fig. 4 - A.

For **pregnant women**, the lower part of the belt must be positioned as low down as possible across the pelvis, to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen» Fig. 4 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the return pulley **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 5 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 5 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even, in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries, as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then abruptly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. pencils, spectacles, pens, keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

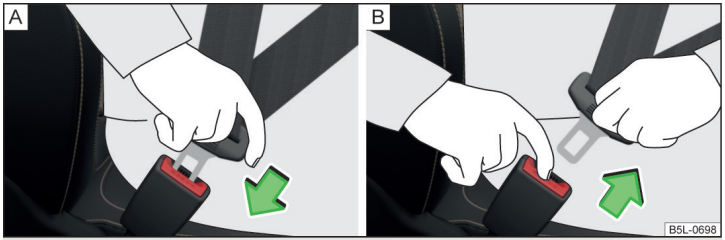


Fig. 6 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

Before fastening the belt

› Adjust the head restraint properly (does not apply to seats with integrated head restraints).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fastening

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 6 - A until you hear it click into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Grip the lock tongue and press the red button in the buckle» Fig. 6 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING

The reel opening for the lock tongue must not be blocked otherwise the lock tongue will not lock into place properly.

Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel 15
Belt tensioners 15

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

The seat belt can move freely when it is pulled slowly. The seat belt is locked by the inertia reel when it is pulled suddenly. The belts also lock under full braking, under acceleration, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision of a certain severity, the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 16
Airbag deployment 17
Safety instructions 17

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The airbag will only provide optimum protection in conjunction with wearing the seat belt, the airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 31.

System description

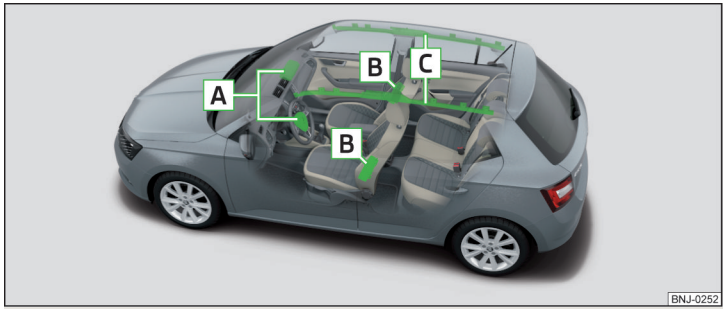


Fig. 7 **Airbag installation points**

Airbag installation points » Fig. 7

A Front airbags
B Side airbags
C Head airbags

Front airbags - the forward thrust of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully-inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The front airbags can be identified by the letteringAIRBAG featured on the steering wheel and on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Side airbags - The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunged into the fully inflated airbag. The risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

The side air bags can be identified by a label with the letteringAIRBAG marked on the front seat backrests.

Head airbags - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The head airbags are provided with the letteringAIRBAGmarked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster» page 31.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 19.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 19.

Airbag deployment



Fig. 8 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag fills with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbag inflates, smoke is released. This is not a sign of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. The important factors here are the hardness of the object with which the vehicle collides, the angle of impact, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor in the deployment of the airbags is the degree of deceleration at the time. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The ignition is switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - position).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

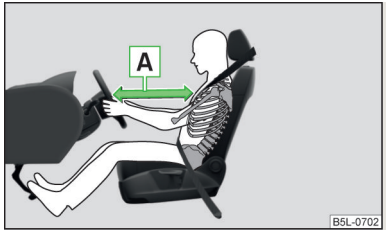


Fig. 9
Safe distance from the steering wheel and dash panel

WARNING

General information
- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer optimum protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 10.
- The airbag unleashes enormous force when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or fatalities if the driver and passengers are not seated properly. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 22.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must then be replaced.
- The surface of the steering wheel and the dash panel should only be cleaned with a dry or slightly dampened cloth in the area of the front airbags.

WARNING

Information about the front airbags

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or the dashboard » Fig. 9 - A, If you do not keep this distance, it means that the airbag system cannot protect you - There is a risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » page 18, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects should be placed in front of the occupants in the front seats in the deployment area of the front airbags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side must not be plastered, covered or modified in any way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.) may be mounted near the airbag installation points and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side.

WARNING

Information on side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on the hooks in the vehicle, do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets. Do not use hangers to hang up clothes.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 128.
- No excessive force, e.g. through blows, kicks etc. should be applied to the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side airbags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!

WARNING (Continued)

- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of a type expressly authorised by ŠKODA AUTO. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation points for the side airbags should be immediately repaired by a specialist company.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 128.
- No changes of any sort should be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 18
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 19

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 10 *on page 19* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Service Partner to switch off any other airbags.

A warning light indicates that the airbag has been deactivated » page 31.

Deactivating an airbag should, for example, be considered only in the following cases.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing towards the rear» page 20.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated at the time of the vehicle being sold, the purchaser must be informed!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

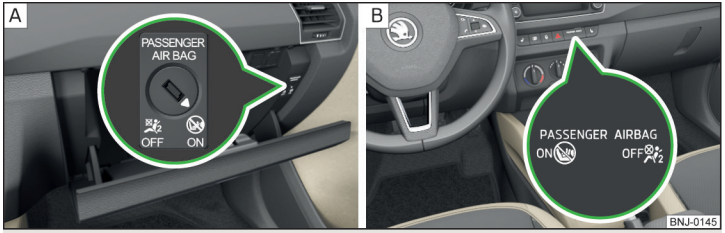


Fig. 10 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Switch positions » Fig. 10 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the warning light illuminates OFF » Fig. 10 - B

ON The front passenger airbag is switched on - after switching on the ignition, the warning light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light ON lights up after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident, children should only be transported in child seats!

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 21
Use of a child seat on the front seat 21
Child safety and the side airbag 22
Classification of child seats 22
Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt 22

Please refer to the instructions in this Owner's Manual and the child seat manufacturer's instructions with regard to the installation and use of the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport children in the rear seats. Only transport a child in the passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: Large E in a circle, the approval number is underneath.

WARNING

- You should never carry children - including babies! - on your lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. In an emergency, they might not be able to get out of the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle throughout the journey! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat, as they can suffer severe, or even fatal, injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even, in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are positioned properly. Care should also be taken to ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 64. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 11 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This warning is also given on stickers that are located in the following places.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 11 - A.
- On the B-column on the front passenger side» Fig. 11 – B.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with his/her back facing the direction of travel » !.
- Set the front passenger seat back as vertically as possible so that there is firm contact between the passenger seat back and the child seat back.
- Where possible, move the front passenger seat back so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat behind.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal, injuries in the event of it being deployed.
- Once a child seat in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated.

Use of a child seat on the front seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 12
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 12.

Child safety and the side airbag

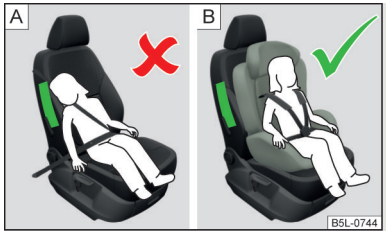


Fig. 13
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag» Fig. 13 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 13 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0 up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U[a)]

[a)] If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system 23
Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIXsystem 23
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system 24

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 14
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child in place using the ISOFIX-system » Fig. 14.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0 up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	**IL-SU** **IUF**	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	X	**IL-SU**	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	**IL-SU**	X

[a)] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in **ISOFIX** in the "Semi-Universal" category. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat is approved for use with the **ISOFIX**-system. Note the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the **ISOFIX** installation of a child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the **TOP TETHER** system attachment belt.

X The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX**-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

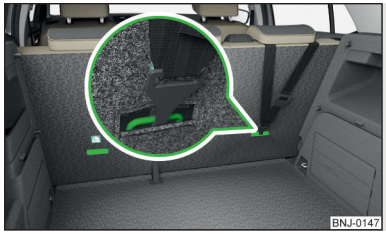


Fig. 15
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 15.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a hitch point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER**-system on the seats equipped with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

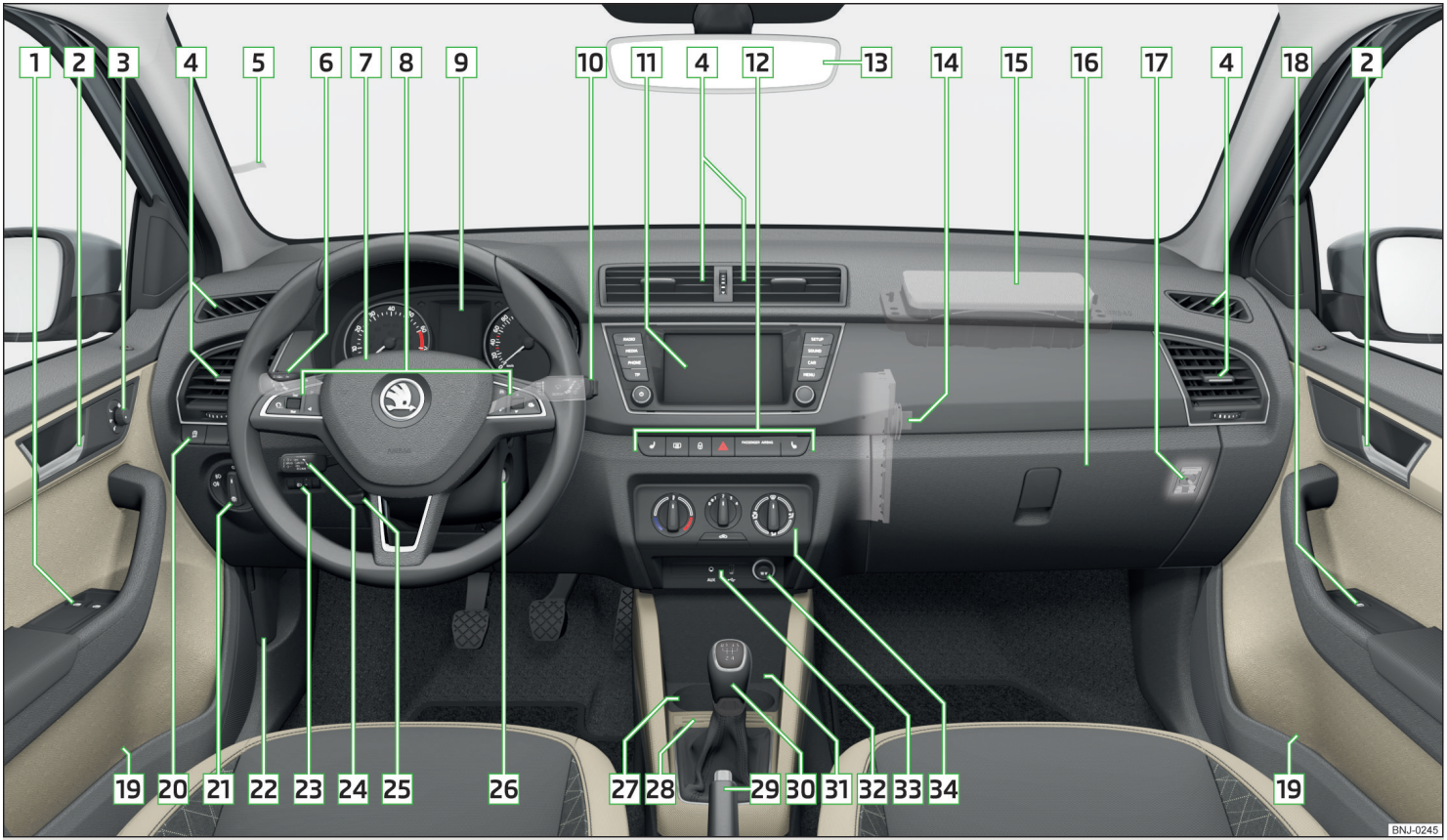


Fig. 16 **Cockpit example for LHD models**

Operation

cockpit

Overview

1 Electric windows — 51
2 Door opening lever — 47
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 61
4 Air outlet vents — 88
5 Ticket holder — 66
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Direction and high beam — 54
- Speed regulating system — 107
- Speed limiter — 108

7 Steering wheel with horn / with driver's front airbag — 16
8 Buttons for operating the information system — 36
9 Instrument cluster — 27
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers — 59
- Information system — 36

11 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Storage compartment — 68
- Infotainment » *User Owner's Manual for Infotainment*

12 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Left seat heating — 65
- Rear window heating — 58
- Central locking system — 46
- Hazard lights — 56
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag — 19
- Right seat heating — 65

13 Interior rear-view mirror — 61
14 Memory card slot (in the front passenger storage compartment) » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*
15 Front passenger airbag — 16
16 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 71
17 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 19
18 Electric window in the front passenger door — 51
19 Storage compartment — 67
20 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- START STOP — 92
- Traction control (TCS) — 102
- Parking aid — 103
- Tyre Press. Loss Indicator — 117

21 Light switch — 53
22 Bonnet release lever — 138
23 Regulator for headlamp beam adjustment for the headlights — 53
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 111
25 Steering wheel locking lever — 11
26 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 91
- Starter button — 91

27 Cup holder — 68
28 Coin and card holders — 67
29 Handbrake lever — 94
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 95
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 96

31 Storage compartment — 67
32 USB input / AUX input — 67
33 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12-Volt power socket — 70
- Cigarette lighter — 69

34 Controls for heating / air conditioning — 85

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 16.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

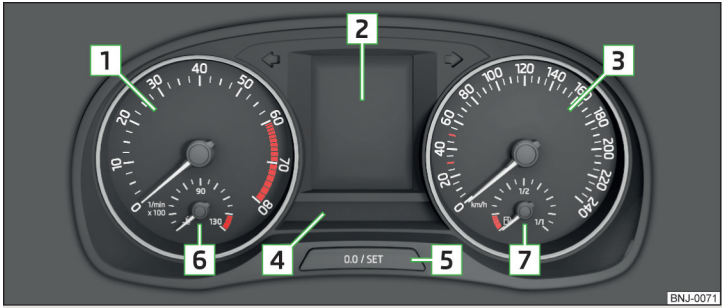


Fig. 17 **Instrument cluster - Version 1**

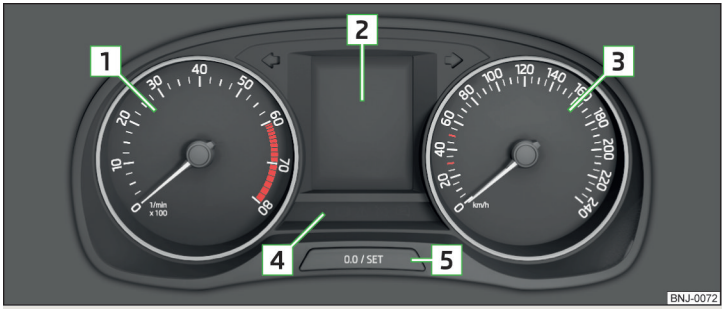


Fig. 18 **Instrument cluster - Version 2**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rev counter ____ 27
Coolant temperature gauge ____ 28
Fuel gauge ____ 28

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 27
   - with warning lights » page 28
2 Display » page 36
3 Speedometer
   - with warning lights » page 28
4 Bar with warning lights » page 28
5 Operation key:
   - Set the time » page 37
   - Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 36
   - Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 41
6 Coolant temperature gauge » page 28
7 Fuel gauge » page 28

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated/deactivated in the» *Infotainment Owner's Manual*.

Rev counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 17 *on page 27* or » Fig. 18 *on page 27* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 37.

! CAUTION

The rev counter pointer may only move into the red area for a short time - otherwise risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge



Fig. 19
Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1 » Fig. 17 *on page 27*.

The display » Fig. 19only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range - The pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - The pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range The pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 34.

Fuel gauge

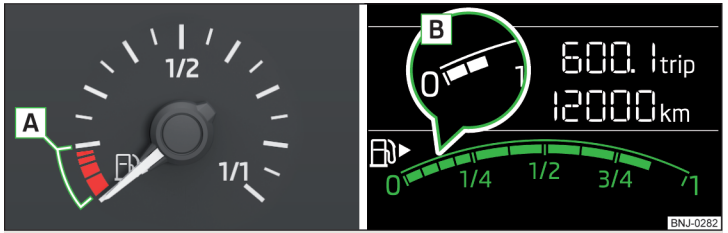


Fig. 20 **Fuel gauge: In the instrument cluster / the display of the instrument cluster**

The display » Fig. 20 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 45 litres.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A or B, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 32.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates a fraction less.
- The arrow▶next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

handbrake 29
Braking system 29
Front seat belt warning light 29
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 30
Power steering / steering lock (Motor start-up with button press) 30
Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS) 30
Traction control (TCS) disabled 31
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 31
Rear fog light 31
Emission control system 31
Preheating unit (diesel) 31
EPC warning light (petrol) 31
Airbag system 31
Tyre pressure 32

Fuel reserve 32
Turn signal system 32
Trailer turn signal lights 33
Fog lights 33
Speed regulating system / speed limiter 33
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox) 33
Main beam 33
Automatic gearbox 33
Rear seat belt warning light 33
Generator 34
Coolant 34
Engine oil pressure 34
Engine oil level 34
Lamp failure 35
Diesel particle filter (diesel) 35
Windscreen washer fluid level 35
START-STOPsystem 35
Display a low temperature 35
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 36
Distance warning (Front Assist) 36
Advance warning / Emergency braking (Front Assist) 36
Service 36

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster» Fig. 17 *on page 27*or» Fig. 18 *on page 27*.

- Engine revolutions counter 1
- Display 2
- Speedometer 3
- Bar with warning lights 4

Warning lights in the display

Depending on the importance the warning light (danger) or (warning) illuminates along with some of the warning lights in the bar with the warning lights.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » page 56. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 137, *Engine compartment*.

handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – the hand brake has been applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

- Release the handbrake.

Braking system

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

- Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - There is a risk of an accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of over 30 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates - the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▸ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 110.

Power steering / steering lock (Motor start-up with button press)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Fault in the power steering

lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

lights up – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

▸ Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
▸ If the warning light does not go off, stop the vehicle, **stop driving**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
▸ If the warning light does not go off, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defective (engine start push-button)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes	M Steering column lock faulty. Stop! S STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

▸ Park the vehicle, and **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes	M Steering lock: Workshop! S STEERING WORKSHOP

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock not unlocked (engine start push-button)

flashes	M Move the steering wheel! S MOVE STEERING WHEEL

▸ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
▸ If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

System fault

lights up – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▸ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

For more information on the ESC system » page 101, *Stability Control (ESC)* or TCS system » page 102, *Traction control (TCS)*.

Traction control (TCS) disabled

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING
- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 29, *Braking system* , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of an accident occurring!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

System fault
lights up - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M Error: Airbag
S AIRBAG ERROR

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
Illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

WARNING
If a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident! Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Change of tyre pressure values
lights up - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 146.
▸ Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 151 or use the repair kit » page 154.
▸ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 117.

System fault
flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents
The following reasons can also apply if the warning light is illuminated.
▸ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▸ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▸ Snow chains are fitted.
▸ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION
Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 7 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Please refuel » page 135.

Note
The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

flashes – the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▸ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system / speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulating system and/or the adaptive cruise control or by the speed limiter.

flashes – the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.**
	S	**GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

Transmission overheated. You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**

▸ **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▸ If the warning light does not go off, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**

▸ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

lights up – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

- As the vehicle battery during your journey, are all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) must be switched off.
- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Coolant level too low

⚠ Illuminates	M	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level » page 141, *Checking and refilling*.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving!**

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Engine overheat. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

⚠ flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil level: refill oil!**
	S	**ADD OIL**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Reduce oil level!**
	S	**OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil sensor: Workshop!**
	S	**OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4. or 5. Gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position **D / S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▸ Top up the windscreen washer fluid» page 139.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 92, *START-STOPsystem*.

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

The warning lights indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 110.

Distance warning (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system » page 114.

Advance warning / Emergency braking (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – the system has recognized the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 114.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

illuminates – information regarding a service appointment that is due » page 41, *Service interval display*.

[1] Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Display in the instrument cluster 36
Setting the clock 37
Gear recommendation 37
Auto Check Control 37

Display in the instrument cluster

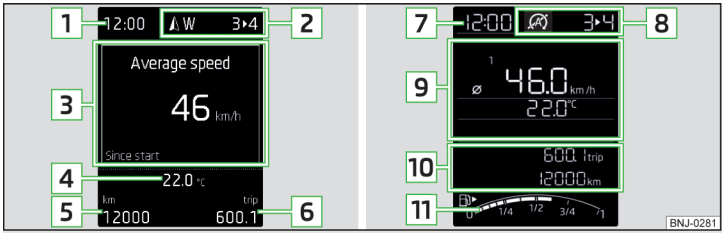


Fig. 21 **Display types: MAXI DOT / Segment Display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 21.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display[1]
3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm

4 Outside temperature
5 Speed regulating system / speed limiter
Total distance travelled
6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7 Time
8 Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)
10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Speed regulating system / speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages
11 Fuel gauge

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 22 *on page 37*.

Setting the clock

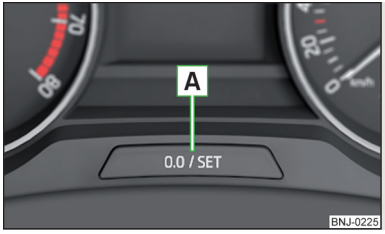


Fig. 22
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 22 until the time is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

The time can also be set in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Gear recommendation

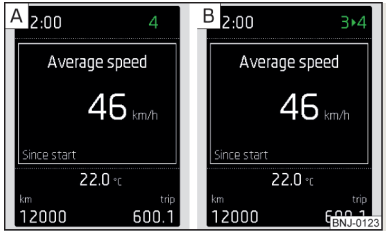


Fig. 23
Information on the selected gear / gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 23
A Optimal gear engaged
B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3. to 4. gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

! WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations (e.g. when overtaking).

Auto Check Control

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

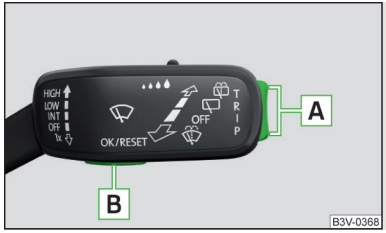


Fig. 24
Buttons on the control lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - Select data / Setting values
B **Press** Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu
B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 25 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on/off voice control
A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off
Skip to next track/station
Switch to previous track/station
Display the assistance systems menu
Press - display the telephone menu; accept/end the call; select contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu
B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this by means of a text message in the Infotainment display.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Data overview 39
Warning at when exceeding the set speed 39
Memory 39

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

If vehicles with MAXI DOTdisplay do not show the driving data after switching on the ignition, select the menu item **Driving data** in the main menu and confirm » page 40, *MAXI DOT display*.

The units and the display of some information can be set in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Data overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - Drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Average fuel consumption - Is calculated continuously since the last time that the memory was erased. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

Current fuel consumption - When the vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (in models in some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Oil temperature if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the **---** symbols are displayed.

Warning at when the preset speed is exceeded allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Current Speed - Digital speedometer.

Average speed - Value constantly recalculated, for distance since last clearing the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance driven - Distance driven since the memory was last cleared.

Driving time - Driving time since last clearing the memory.

Coolant temperature - If the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is over 120°C, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster » page 34.

Warning at when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the speed stored in the memory, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

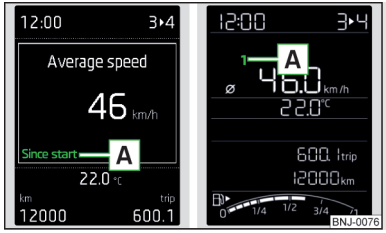


Fig. 26
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M) / Segment display (S)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 26.

Since start (M) or "1" (S)
Driving data is stored from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition, new data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) and "2" (S)
The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9 999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)
The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› To **choose the memory bank**, confirm the selected indication again and select the desired memory.
› To **delete the memory bank** of the chosen selection, hold down the button confirming the selection.

The following driving data is stored in different memory banks.
▸ Average fuel consumption.
▸ Distance driven.
▸ Average speed.
▸ Driving time.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Menu item**Navigation** 40
Menu item**Audio** 40
Menu item**telephone** 41
Menu item**assist systems** 41

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 38.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 38
- **Assist systems** » page 41
- **Navigation** » page 40
- **Audio** » page 40
- **Telephone** » page 41;
- **Vehicle** » page 37, *Auto Check Control*

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can also be set in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual -Infotainment*.
- For vehicles without Infotainment, the display language can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Menu item Navigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

▸ Driving recommendations
▸ Compass
▸ Last destinations

Menu item Audio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
▸ Station currently being played (name/frequency).
▸ The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM 3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
▸ List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
▸ TP traffic announcements.

Media
▸ Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemtelephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Symbols in the display

- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
- Switch-off microphone

Menu itemassist systems

In the menu item **Assist systems**, the Front Assist system can be activated/deactivated.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval ____ 41
Service messages ____ 41
Resetting the service interval display ____ 42

The service interval display shows the kilometres or days until the next service event.

Information regarding service intervals » page 129.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

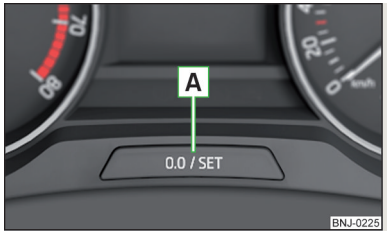


Fig. 27
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 27until the**Service menu item** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

The details regarding the remaining kilometres or days until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service interval is reached, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message.

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display be reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 28
QR code with reference to the ŠKODA websites

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a supported external device (e.g. telephone, tablet) give the option to further transmit the received data.

Some ŠKODA applications can be displayed in the Infotainment display by means of a SmartLinkconnection » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 28 using the respective application on your external device**or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with an overview of the available applications, compatible devices and other information about SmartGate.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartgate

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 43, *Password/PIN code*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODAapplication without changing it.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the external devices.

connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

This type of connection is intended for external devices running Android and iOS operating systems.

Connecting to an Android external device
› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using upper-case letters» page 43).
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an external iOS device
› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using upper-case letters» page 43).

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these external devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection
If the communication device has already had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Wi-Fi is switched on in the external device that is to be connected to.
✓ The external device that is to be connected to stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi direct

This type of connection is intended for external devices running the Android operating system.

Connection set-up
› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› In the application, change the connection type to Wi-Fi direct.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

The password for the connection to SmartGate _...[1] includes the last six digits of the vehicle identification number » page 43.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in a different vehicle, you must make a new connection in the SmartGate application.

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection
If the external device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

SmartGate web interface

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the external device that is connected with SmartGate.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after pressing the buttons "Save" → "Reboot".

Password/PIN code

The password for the **Wi-Fi** connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (entered in upper case); the PIN code for the **Wi-Fi direct** connection is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the external device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

Change password for the Wi-Fi connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 43, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the"WPA / WPA2 key:" menu item, enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" interface.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

PIN code change for the Wi-Fi Direct connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 43, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the"WiFi Direct PIN:"menu item, enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Note

If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder 45
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 45
Unlocking/locking - KESSY 46
Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button 46
SafeLock 47
Individual settings 47
Opening/closing a door 47
Child safety lock 48
Malfunctions 48

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 47.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle doors have been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

[1] If the "Reboot" interface is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) could lock the vehicle, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the key grooves clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder

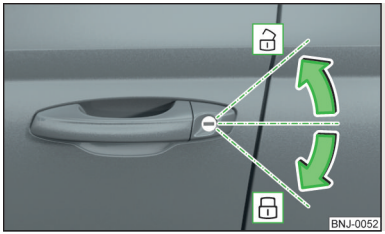


Fig. 29
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 29

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

CAUTION

With regards vehicles with the KESSY system for locking / unlocking the vehicle the cap of the lock cylinder must first be removed with the remote control key via the lock cylinder » page 159.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

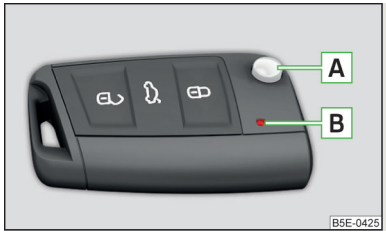


Fig. 30
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 30

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Safety button to unlock the boot lid
- **A** Button for popping out/pushing in the key bit
- **B** Battery status warning light - if the warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

By **pressing lightly** on the button the lid is unlocked.

By **pressing down** on the button the lid is unlocked and unlatched (part-opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period of time after which the flap is locked can be set » page 50.

CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superimposition by transmitters close to the car.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 m away » page 159.

Unlocking/locking - KESSY

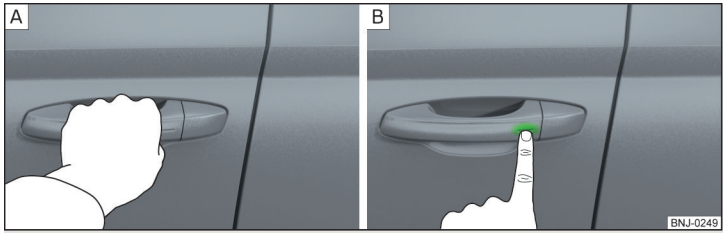


Fig. 31 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** » Fig. 31 A the vehicle.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 31 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock it within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

! CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button



Fig. 32
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Prerequisites for locking / unlocking with the central locking button
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ None of the doors are open.

› To **lock**, press the button » Fig. 32.

Locking is displayed in the button by the illumination of the symbol.

The following applies after locking.
▸ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
▸ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

! WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes an attempted break-in to the vehicle more difficult.

Activating
SafeLock is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Log book!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Activation display
When SafeLock is activated the warning light in the driver's door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Deactivating
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 49.

The warning light in the driver door flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds, then goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the SafeLock system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

The SafeLock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the SafeLock system activated, no-one may remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to only unlock the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km / h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening/closing a door

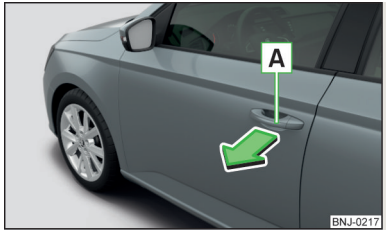


Fig. 33
Door handle

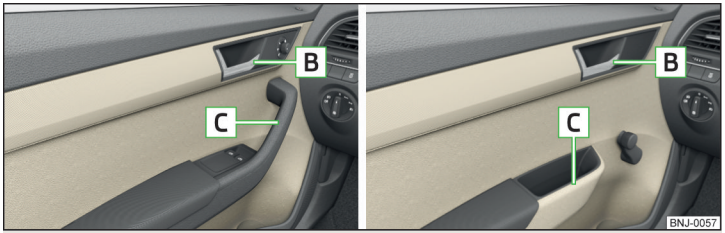


Fig. 34 **Door opening lever - Variant 1 / Variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

› To **open from the outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 33.
› To **open from the inside** pull the door opening lever B » Fig. 34 and push the door away from you.
› To the **lock from the inside** grab handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst the vehicle is in motion - risk of fatality!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - danger to life!
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – risk of injury.

Child safety lock



Fig. 35 **Rear door: Switching the child safety system on/off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

› To **turn on** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position » Fig. 35.
› To **turn off** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 45 first.

Synchronise remote

If the buttons on the remote control key have been depressed several times beyond the effective range of the equipment or the battery has been replaced in the remote control key and the vehicle cannot be unlocked with the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

A failure in the central locking system can lead the vehicle doors and the boot lid can emergency lock or emergency release » page 159.

Failure of the KESSY system
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 159.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Alarm trigger 49
Interior monitor and towing protection 49

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, check that all doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source, service life of which is 5 years.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 49 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage failure of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 36
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 49 first.

As soon as the **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle, it triggers the alarm.

As soon as the **anti-towing protection** detects tilts in the locked vehicle, it triggers the alarm.

Both systems should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the button on the centre column on the driver side » Fig. 36, the OFF symbol illuminates in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Disabling the two systems switches off SafeLock.

CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening / closing the boot lid ____ 50
Delayed locking of the boot lid ____ 50

WARNING

- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning.
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – There is a risk of injury!

Opening / closing the boot lid

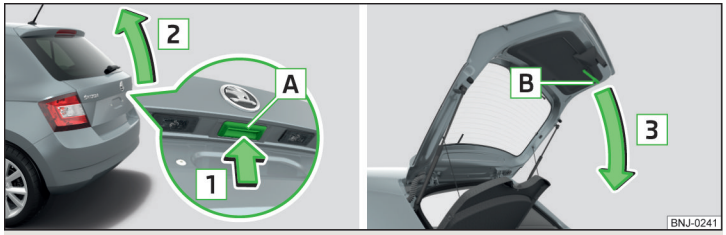


Fig. 37 **Opening / closing the boot lid**

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

› To **open** the lid, press button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 37.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2 .
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 37is disabled when starting off or driving at a speed of over 5 km/h. The button is reactivated when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

window operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mechanical window lifter ____ 51
Electric Windows ____ 51
Force limiter ____ 52
Malfunctions ____ 52

The window can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

Depending on equipment the windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; the window in the front doors or all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and in a controlled manner. Otherwise these could cause severe crushing injuries.
- Power windows in the driver's door and the rear doors are equipped with a force limiter (only applies to the **Variant 2**) » page 52. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical window lifter

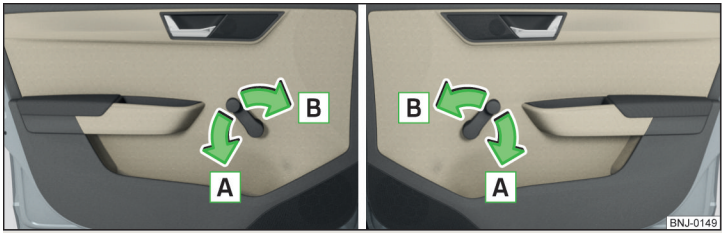


Fig. 38 **Window operation: Left / Right**

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 38.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric Windows

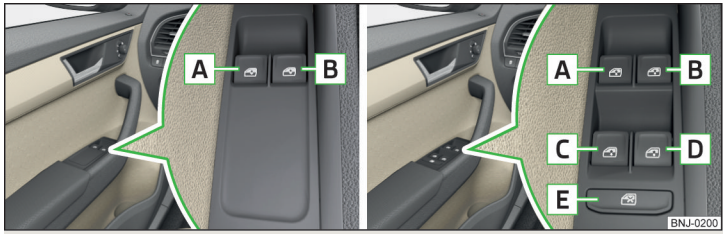


Fig. 39 **Buttons for window-openers: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the front windows - **Variant 1** or the front and rear windows - **Variant 2** be operated by pushing/pulling the door buttons in the driver's door » Fig. 39.

The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors (variant 2) are operated via the button in each door.

Buttons for window levers

A Front door left
B Front door right
C Rear door, left
D Rear door, right
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

In**Variant 2**» Fig. 39The driver's window can be automatically fully opened / closed by pushing or pulling the button up to the latch. Pushing/ pulling the button again causes the window to stop immediately.

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the indicator light in the button E lights up.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Only version 2 of the power windows is equipped with the power limiter (does not apply to the passenger window).

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

! WARNING

- **Variant 1** of the power window » Fig. 39 *on page 51* **has no** force limiter. The windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- The **passenger window in variant 2** of the power window » Fig. 39 *on page 51* **has no** force limiter. The window should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanisms has cooled down.

The electric power windows are deactivated after the vehicle battery has been disconnected. After connecting the vehicle battery, the system is **activated** as follows.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights 53
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT) 54
Turn signal and main beam 54
Automatic driving light control 55
Fog lights/rear fog light 55
Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 56
Hazard warning light system 56
Parking lights 56
Driving abroad 57

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 40 *on page 53*.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short time.

Operating the lights

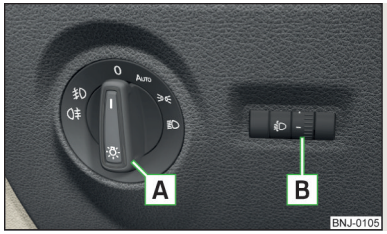


Fig. 40
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

To **switch the lights on/off**, turn the A » Fig. 40 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 55

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 56

Switch on low beam

To **adjust the headlight range control**, turn dial B » Fig. 40 in line with the vehicle load » !.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions - otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off[1] and the parking lights will come on. The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the start button, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The daytime running lights (hereinafter only referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment
This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Infotainment Owner´s Manual* .

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s).

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s)..

! WARNING
Always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

[1] Does not apply to the position AUTO, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 56.

Turn signal and main beam

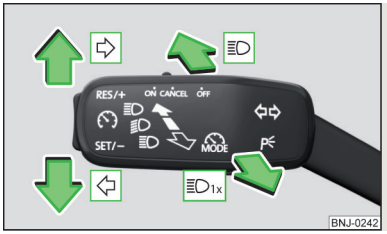


Fig. 41
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 41
⇨ Switch on right turn signal
⇦ Switch on left turn signal
≡D Switch on high beam
≡D1x Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically, depending on the steering angle after completing the turn.

Comfort signalling
When the operating lever is pressed lightly up or down, the indicator in question flashes three times.

If during the convenience turn signal, the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

The convenience turn signal can be activated/deactivated » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving light control



Fig. 42
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 42 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (hereafter referred to as function)
The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be set or activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual*.

▸ Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
▸ Automatic driving-light control during rain

CAUTION

Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

Fog lights/rear fog light

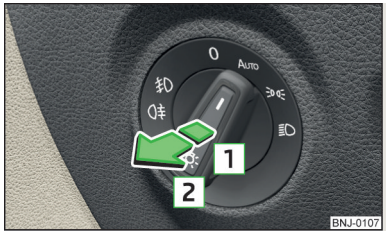


Fig. 43
Light switch - Switch front/rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Switching on the fog lights / rear fog lights is possible if the following conditions apply.

✓ The lights switch is in position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 43.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, turn the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **turn on** the **rear fog light**, pull the light switch to position 2, the indicator light will light up in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not fitted with **fog lights**, the **rear fog light** is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

The fog lights/rear fog light are **switched off** in the reverse order.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering), if the following conditions are met.

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The two functions can be **activated/deactivated and set** in Infotainment *» Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

! CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 44
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button » Fig. 44.

When first switched on, the turn signal lights and the warning light ⚠ buttons all flash at the same time as the warning lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and the turn signal only flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle [2].

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light P≤ on one side

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨ or ⇦ until it stops » Fig. 41 *on page 54*.

The parking light is turned on, on the relevant side of the vehicle.

[1] If the two switch-on variants are conflicting (e.g. if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on), the turn signal light has the higher priority.

[2] Valid only for comfort signalling » page 54.

Switching on the parking lights on both sides
› Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch into position » page 53, the parking lights are turned on.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible warning is turned off.

CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically!

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have the headlights adapted by a specialist garage.

Interior lighting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior lights 57
Interior lighting, rear 58

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition off (or after a door is opened),the lights will automatically switch off after approximately 10 minutes.

Front interior lights

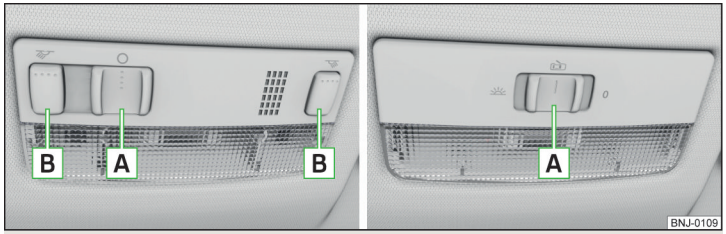


Fig. 45 **Operation of the front light: Version 1 / version 2**

Positions of the sliding light switch A » Fig. 45
Switching on
0 Switching off
Automatic operation

Switch on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 45
Reading lamp left
Reading lamp right

Automatic operation - position
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior lighting, rear

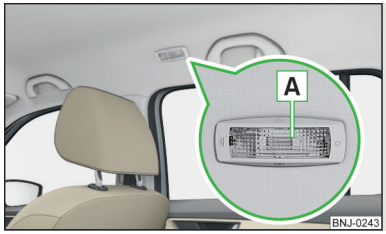


Fig. 46
Interior lights at the rear

Operation (by moving the lens A) » Fig. 46

- Activating
- Automatic operation (centre position) [1]
- Switching off

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater 58
Front sun visors 59
Panoramic roof sun shade 59

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visor that could restrict the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or in a collision.

Rear window heater



Fig. 47
Button for rear window heater

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The heater for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

› To switch the heating **on / off**, press button » Fig. 47.

When the heater is switched on, a lamp illuminates inside the button.

The heating automatically switches off after 10 minutes.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 142, *Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection*.

[1] In this position, the same conditions apply as for the automatic operation of the lighting from the front seats » page 57.

Front sun visors

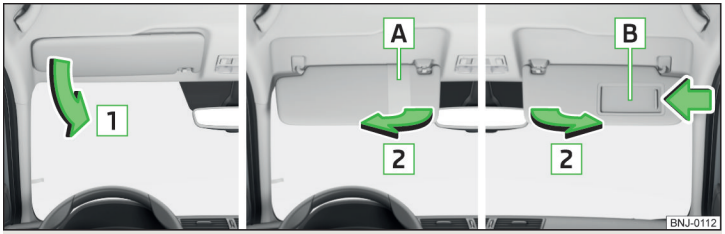


Fig. 48 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and parking permit holder**

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 48

1 Swivel cover towards the windscreen
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Parking ticket band (depending on equipment)
B Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)

Note

A vanity mirror can be installed in either the driver's or the front passenger's sun visor.

Panoramic roof sun shade



Fig. 49
Open sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 49.

WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front wipers and washers 60
Rear wiper and washer/Reversing camera cleaning system 60
Headlight cleaning system 60

The windscreen wipers only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 161.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully separate frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and free from snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is a risk of damage to the windscreen by the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the wiper arm is raised from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet by the wiper arms.

Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer jets can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

Front wipers and washers



Fig. 50
Operating the front windscreen wipers and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 50

HIGH High-speed wiping

LOW Slow-speed wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single wipe of the windscreen (spring-loaded position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position **INT** - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the disc (spring-loaded position) - after releasing the operating lever the wipers continue for another 1 to 3 strokes.

Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain In Infotainment, can be **activated/deactivated** » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

! WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.

Rear wiper and washer/Reversing camera cleaning system



Fig. 51
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 51

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes
Spraying the rear view camera (sprung position)

Rear screen wiping

OFF Wipers and washers off

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment» *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The headlights are cleaned with every first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The low beam is switched on.

✓ The outside temperature is about -11° C to +36° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming 61
Mirrors 61

WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, they make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the interior mirror whenever possible for assessing the distances to the vehicles following behind.

Interior mirror dimming

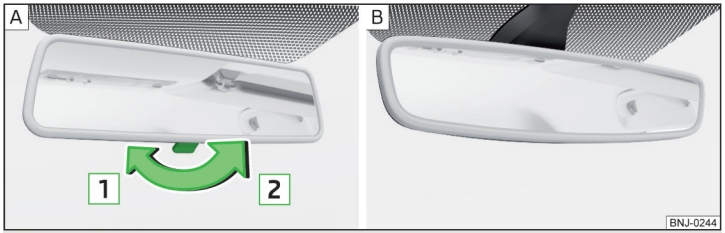


Fig. 52 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 52 - A

1 Basic mirror position (not darkened)
2 Mirror dimming

Mirror with automatic dimming

The mirror dimming» Fig. 52 - B is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for several minutes plenty of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Mirrors

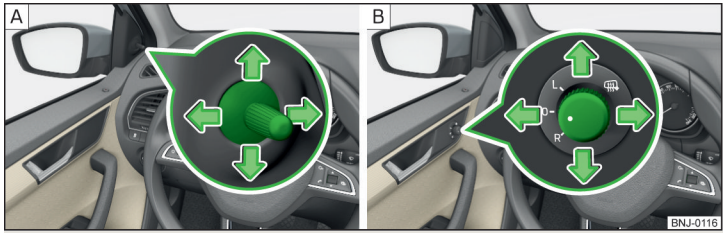


Fig. 53 **Exterior mirror operation: mechanical / electrical**

Read and observe ! on page 61 first.

The outer mirror surfaces are (depending on the vehicle specification) mechanically or electrically adjustable.

› To **set** the mirror surface, move the knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 53.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by carefully pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

The knob for the electrically adjustable mirrors can be moved to the following positions» Fig. 53 - B.

L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Exterior mirror heater (only operates when the engine is running)

Folding in the exterior mirrors
The mirror can be manually folded in towards the side window. To restore it to its original position, fold back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces if the exterior mirror heater is switched on - risk of burns.

Seats and headrests

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats 62
Setting the armrest height 63

WARNING
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – otherwise risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer crushing injuries as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Adjusting the front seats

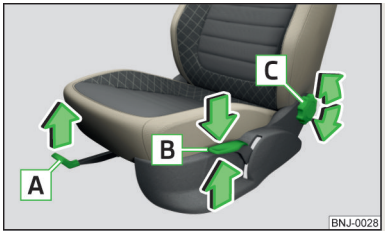


Fig. 54
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 62 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled, pressed or turned in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 54.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing, the control lever must lock audibly)
B Adjusting the seat height
C Adjusting the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)

Note
After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism for the backrest angle.

Setting the armrest height



Fig. 55
Raising the armrest

Read and observe ! on page 62 first.

› To **Adjusting the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow into one of the six locking positions » Fig. 55.
› To **fold down**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow up to the stop and then fold back down again.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat backrests 63
Rear seat 64

Seat backrests

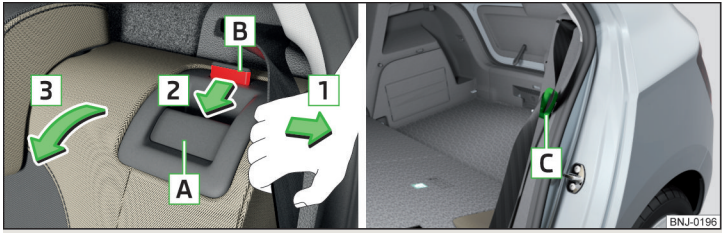


Fig. 56 **Fold seat backrest forwards / standby position of the seat belt**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

Folding forward

› Push the headrest into the seat backrest up to the latch.
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 56.
› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 2 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 3.

With the **undivided** backrest, the two external security belts must be pulled towards the side panel and the release handles A to press on both sides of the backrest simultaneously.

Folding backwards

› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 56.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 3 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the backrest, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the backrest and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the backrest.

! WARNING

- The seat backs in occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

When moving the seat backrest the seat belts should not be trapped - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

i Note

The belt tongue of the outer seat belts C can be inserted into the side panel. Ready position» Fig. 56.

Rear seat

Applies to the Fabia Estate

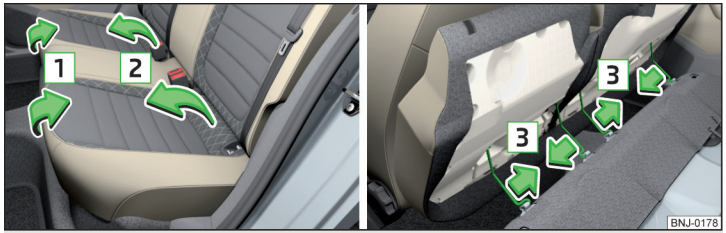


Fig. 57 **Fold rear seat forward / remove split rear bench seat**

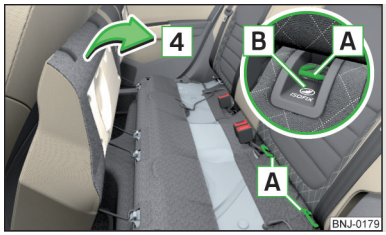


Fig. 58
Fold the rear seat back

The luggage space can be increased by folding the rear seat forward and removing it.

For vehicles with split rear seats, the parts of the rear seat can be folded forward individually and removed.

› To **fold**, pull up the bench in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down in arrow direction 2 » Fig. 57.
› To **Remove**, press the wire clamps in the direction of arrows 3 so that they become detached from the holders, and remove the seat.
› To **use**, press the wire clamps in the direction of arrows 3 and insert it into the brackets.
› To **open**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 58.
› Place the rear seat on the eyelets A, so that the eyelets A click into the recesses in the plastic caps for ISOFIX B .

WARNING

The rear seat may not be pulled in under the eyelets A when folding back. The rear seat could not be properly secured.

CAUTION

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets A when being folded back - there is a risk of damaging the rear seat.

Headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting the height 64
Removing/inserting 65

Note

- The middle rear headrest is only adjustable in two positions.
- In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Setting the height

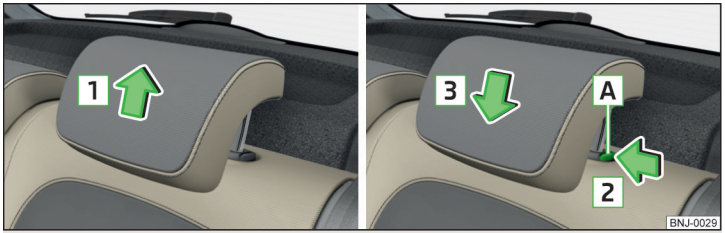


Fig. 59 **Setting the height of the back headrest**

Height adjustment of the headrests is the same in the front and rear.

› Grasp the headrest and move **upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 59.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/inserting

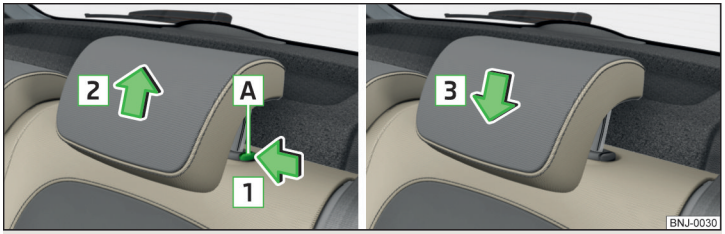


Fig. 60 **Removing/instaling the headrest**

The removal and installation of headrests is the same in the front and rear.

› Before removing/installingthe headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest slightly forward » page 63.
› To **remove** the headrest, pull it out of the seat backrestup to the latch.
› Press locking button **A** in the direction of arrow **1**, and pull out the head restraint in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 60.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow **3** until the locking button clicks into place.

Front seat heater



Fig. 61
Buttons for front seat heater

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

Seat heating buttons » Fig. 61

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on**the heater at maximum heat (level 2) press button or .

By repeatedly pressing the button, the heat is turned down until it is completely **switched off**. The level of the seat heater is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

If you are sensitive to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. If the seat heater is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the heating for unoccupied seats.
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have objects on them (e.g. a child seat, bag or similar).
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have seat covers or protective covers on them.

Note

- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to their highest intensity (level 2), they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 10 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 142, *Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection*.

Useful features

Interior fittings

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Ticket holder 66
Storage compartments in the doors 67
Storage compartment in the front centre console 67
USB and AUX input 67
Coin and card holders 67
Storage compartment on the dash panel 68
Cup holders 68
Waste container 68
Cigarette lighter 69
Ashtray 69
12-volt power outlet 70
Multimedia holder 70
Storage compartment in the front arm rest 71
Glasses compartment 71
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 71
Storage compartment on the side of front seat 72
storage compartment under the passenger seat 72
Storage compartment for umbrella 72
Clothes hook 72
Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats 73
Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats 73
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 73

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat other than objects intended for this purpose (e.g. child safety seat) – risk of accident.
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments should be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened lid or through the loose objects in the compartment.
- Make sure no objects protrude from the storage compartments - There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible loads for the storage compartments and pockets - risk of injury and risk of damage to the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars etc. should only be stored in the ashtray - danger of fire/burns!
- The storage compartments, multimedia holder and waste container are not a substitute for the ashtray and must not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Do not place any large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Ticket holder



Fig. 62
Ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The ticket holder» Fig. 62 is provided for the holding and displaying e.g. car park tickets.

Storage compartments in the doors

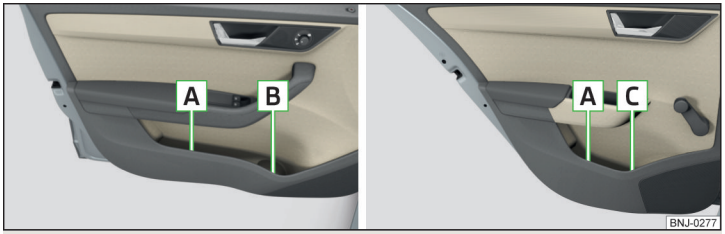


Fig. 63 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 63

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartments in the door» page 149.

! WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 63is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not stick out - danger of restricting the effectiveness of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 64
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 64.

USB and AUX input



Fig. 65
USB and AUX inputs

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The USB input (with ⇜ in) and AUX input (with AUX in) are located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 65.

Information on use » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Coin and card holders

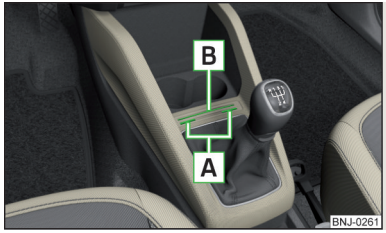


Fig. 66
Coin and card holders

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The coin holder A and card holder B are located in the front centre console » Fig. 66.

Storage compartment on the dash panel



Fig. 67
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The storage compartment is located in the middle part of the panel » Fig. 67.

Cup holders



Fig. 68
Cup holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder » Fig. 68.

! WARNING

- Do not use cups or beakers made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. They may spill as the vehicle moves – there is a risk of scalding.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

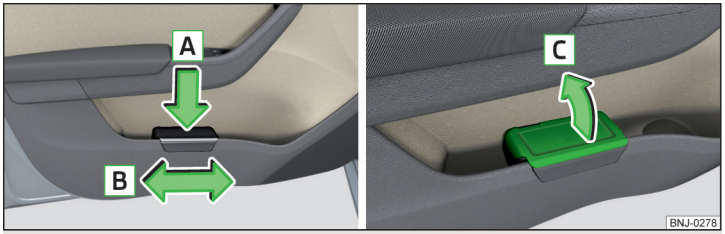


Fig. 69 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

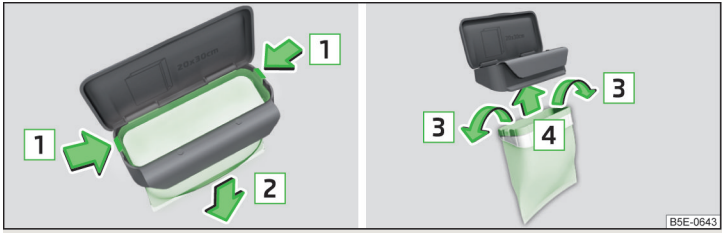


Fig. 70 **Replace bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 69.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 69.

Open / close waste container

› Lift the lid in the direction of arrow C » Fig. 69.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 70.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly on the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 71
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 71.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - It can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12-volt socket.

Ashtray

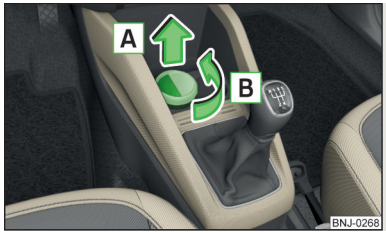


Fig. 72
Removing ashtray and opening

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The ashtray can be used for disposing of ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like etc

› Remove the ashtray in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 72.
› To the **Open**turn the ashtray cover in the direction of arrow B.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

12-volt power outlet

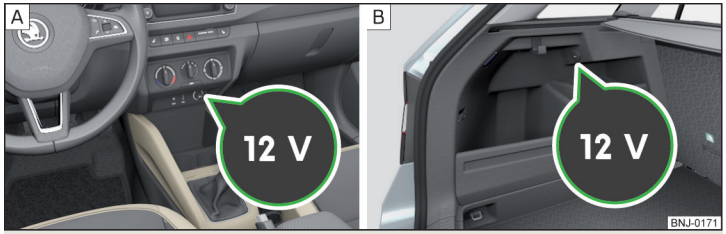


Fig. 73 **12-volt power outlet cover: the middle part of the panel / in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover of the socket» Fig. 73 - A or open the cover of the socket» Fig. 73 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!
- Stow all devices safely during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – The is a risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – The is a risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

! CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts - otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

Multimedia holder

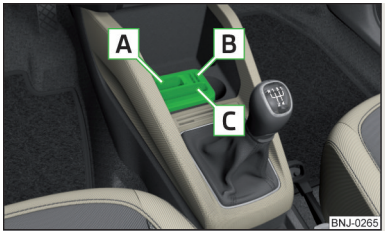


Fig. 74
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 74

A Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
B Storage compartment for storing two coins
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment in the front arm rest



Fig. 75 **Storage compartment / open storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

› To **open** the armrest in the area A grasp and lift the lid of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow » Fig. 75.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Glasses compartment

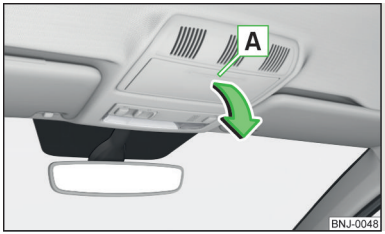


Fig. 76
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

› To **open**, press on the outer edge of the glasses compartment in area A . The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 76.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The tray must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

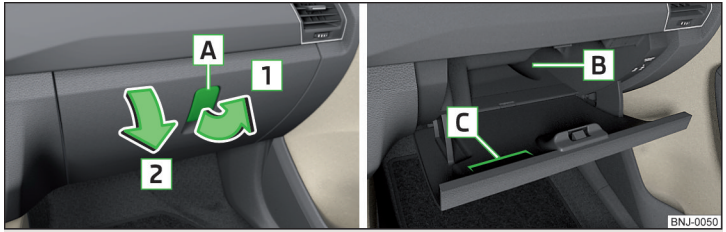


Fig. 77 **Open storage compartment / interior of the storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Depending on the equipment provided, the storage compartment is equipped with a room lamp (this lights when opening the compartment), a bottle rack with a capacity of max. 1 l B and a card holder C » Fig. 77.

› To **open**, pull the opening lever A in the direction of arrow 1. The cover folds in the arrow direction 2.
› To **close**, screw in the lid in the opposite direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Storage compartment on the side of front seat

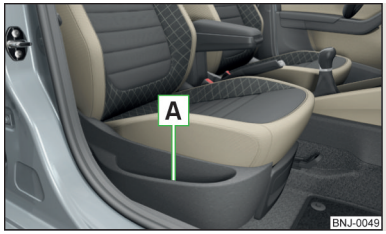


Fig. 78
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The storage compartment A » Fig. 78 is located on the side of the front seat.

storage compartment under the passenger seat



Fig. 79
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 pull and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 79.
› To **close**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow 1 and hold this against the direction of arrow 2 until the storage compartment closes.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for umbrella



Fig. 80
Storage compartment for an umbrella

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The storage compartment under the passenger seat » Fig. 80is used for storing an umbrella.

! CAUTION

Never store a wet umbrella in the storage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the umbrella.

Note

We recommend that you use the umbrella from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Clothes hook

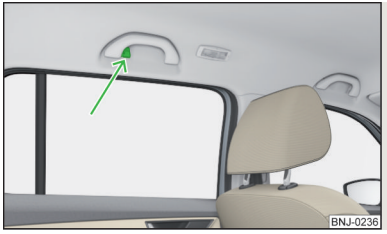


Fig. 81
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the handles of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 81.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing that has been hung up - is a risk of injury.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of head airbags and a danger of injury from the hanger.
- Make sure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impede your vision.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 82
Map pockets

Read and observe and on page 66 first.

The Storage pockets » Fig. 82 are intended for the Storage e.g. of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats



Fig. 83
Storage pocket

Read and observe and on page 66 first.

The storage pockets are located on the inside of the front seats » Fig. 83and are used to store small and light objects (e.g. mobile phones).

The maximum permissible load of each of the pockets is 150 g.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 84 **Storage compartment: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe and on page 66 first.

The open storage compartment is in the rear of the centre console » Fig. 84.

Tablet holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Installing / Remove 74
Handle holder 74

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Installing / Remove



Fig. 85 **Inserting: Adapter / holder**

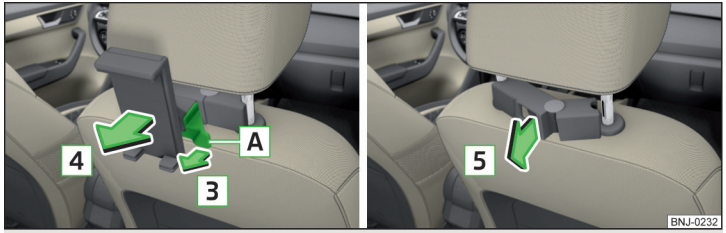


Fig. 86 **Removing: Holder / Adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

› To**insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 85 » !.
› Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder in direction of arrow 4 out of the adapter » Fig. 86.
› Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow 5 from the guide rods of the headrest.

! WARNING

Carefully clip in the adapter - it is a risk of injuring your finger.

Handle holder

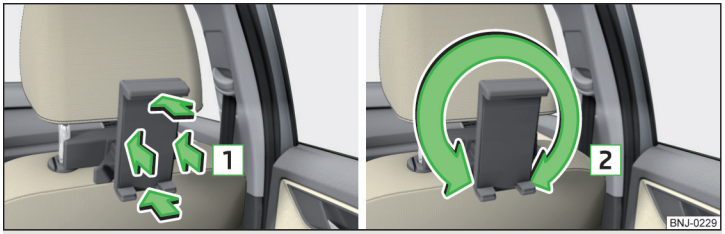


Fig. 87 **Tilt and rotate holder**

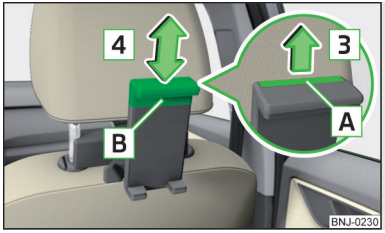


Fig. 88
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The holder may be by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 **tipped** and by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 **turned** » Fig. 87.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 88.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment and transporting objects

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 76
Fixing nets 76
Multifunction pocket 77
Hooks 77
Storage compartments in the luggage compartment 77
Luggage compartment cover 78
Other positions of the luggage compartment cover 78
Roll-up cover 79
Net partition 79
Storage compartments under the floor 80
Cargo elements 80
Flexible storage compartment 80
Class N1 vehicles 80

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

When transporting cargo the instructions below must be followed

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or fixing nets so that they cannot slip.
- ▸ Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- ▸ Match the tyre pressure to the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will go out automatically after 10 minutes.

! WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – There is a risk of an accident!
- An unsecured dirt or improperly attached load could slip during a sudden manoeuvre or in an accident in the vehicle - There is a risk of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.

! CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and not load these punctiform - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

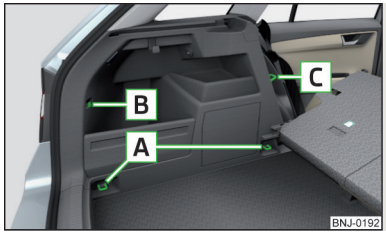


Fig. 89
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 89

A Lashing eyes for securing cargo, fastening nets and multifunction pocket
B Fastener for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
C Lashing eye for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket

The upper front lashing eye C is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes A is 350 kg.

Note

The lashing eyes A cannot be used for attaching bags and nets when the variable loading floor is in the upper position » page 81[1].

Fixing nets

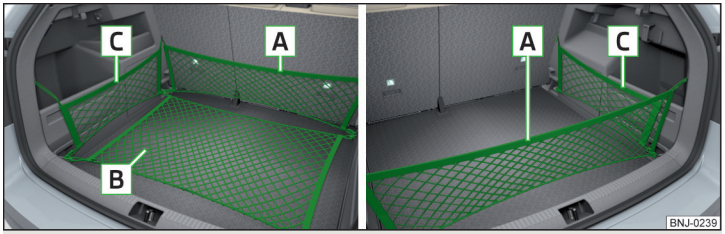


Fig. 90 **Fastening examples for nets**

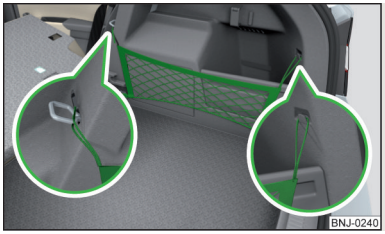


Fig. 91
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 90 **and** » Fig. 91

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket (only applies to some vehicles)

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a variable loading floor.

Multifunction pocket

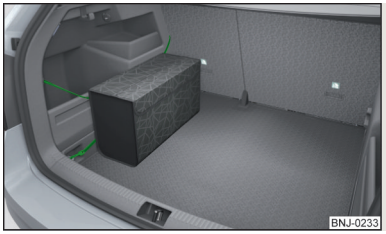


Fig. 92
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The pocket » Fig. 92 can be secured to the fastening elements A, B and C » Fig. 89 *on page 76*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to fastening elements is 3 kg.

Note
In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to secure the bag to the fastening elements.

Hooks



Fig. 93
Hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

A hook for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., is provided on each side of the luggage compartment» Fig. 93.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

CAUTION
- Place the item of luggage suspended from a hook, if possible, in the storage compartment B » Fig. 94 *on page 77*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.
- If an item of luggage weighing more than 2.5 kg is suspended on the hook, then we recommend removing the storage compartment cover B » Fig. 94 *on page 77*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

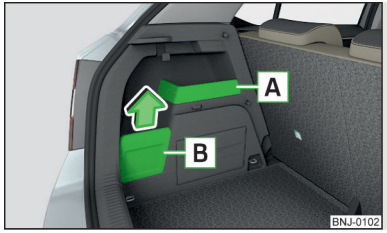


Fig. 94
Storage compartments

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The integrated storage compartment A » Fig. 94is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg in total.

The storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.

The armrest can be removed in the direction of the arrow.

CAUTION
When handling the cover of the storage compartment B, ensure that this or the luggage compartment trim is not damaged.

Luggage compartment cover

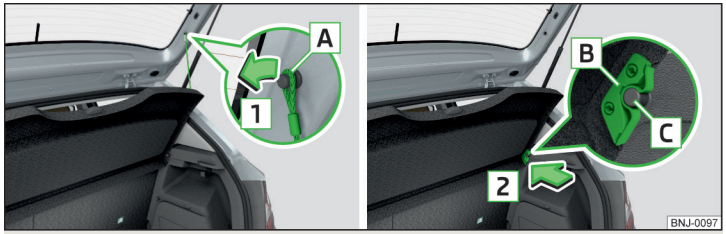


Fig. 95 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 95 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter only referred to as "cover").

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 96 *on page 78*.

The maximum permissible load of the cover is 1 kg.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 95.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› Position the fixtures D on the cover over the studs C » Fig. 95.
› Press both sides onto the upper side of the cover near the studs C. The fixture B must lock into place on the studs C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A.

! WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

! CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Other positions of the luggage compartment cover

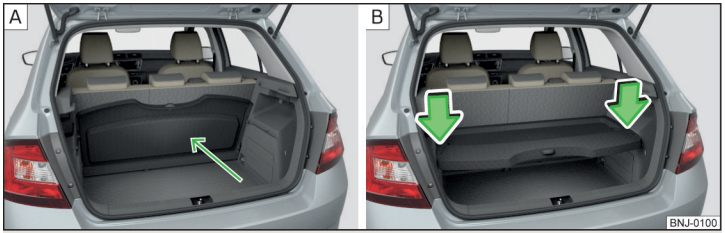


Fig. 96 **Luggage compartment cover: stowed behind the rear seats/in the lower position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrests can be stored» Fig. 96 -A or in the lower position» Fig. 96 - B.

Store cover in the lower position

› Press the top of the cover in the arrow direction » Fig. 96 - B.

In the front area, slots B » Fig. 95 *on page 78* on the cover must be fully engaged with the bolts on the side trim. In the back, the cover must be secured at both ends under the latching.

In the lower position, the cover is designed for storing small objects up to a weight of 2.5 kg in total.

! WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

Roll-up cover

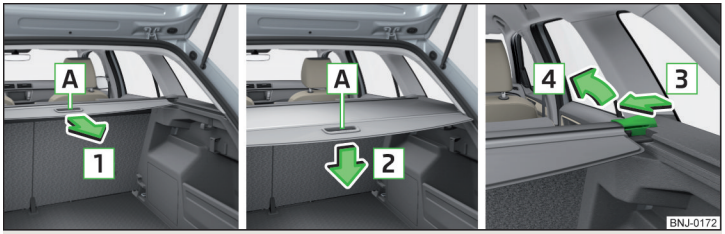


Fig. 97 **Roll-up cover: Pulling/ rolling up / removing**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

› To **Herausziehen**, grasp the cover at grip-point A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it audibly clicks into place» Fig. 97.
› To the **roll up** the cover in the handle area A in direction of arrow 2 to press. The cover rolls up automatically.
› To **Remove** press the rolled door on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 .
› To**install**, first insert the cover on the left side.
› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and insert the cover against arrow direction 4.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

Net partition

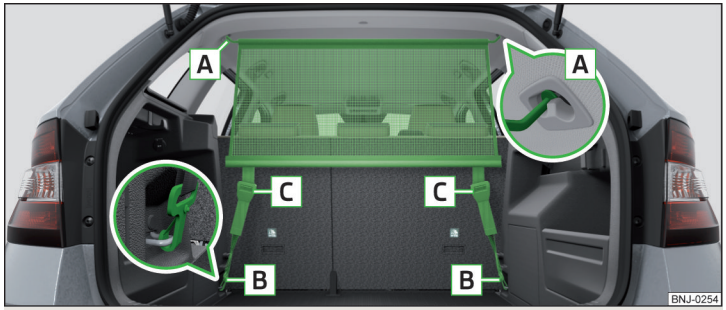


Fig. 98 **Net partition behind the rear seats**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The net partition can be installed behind the rear seats.

For ease of installation / removal of the carabiner B Move the variable loading floor back, remove it from the vehicle if necessary.

Installing/removing

› To the **install**remove the foldable luggage compartment cover » Fig. 97 *on page 79*or the rear seat backrests» page 63.
› First insert the rod into the mount B » Fig. 98on one side and push it forwards. Insert the transverse rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.
› Hang the carabines C at the belt ends into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belts through the tensioning clasp C.

Ausbauis carried out in the reverse order.

i Note

For vehicles with variable loading floor, the nets can be secured only when the variable loading floor is in the lower position» page 81.

Storage compartments under the floor



Fig. 99 **Fold the floor back / storage compartment under the floor**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The storage compartment A is located under the floor of the luggage compartment» Fig. 99.

› Lift the rear portion of the floor and fold forward in the direction of arrow 1 - .

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Cargo elements

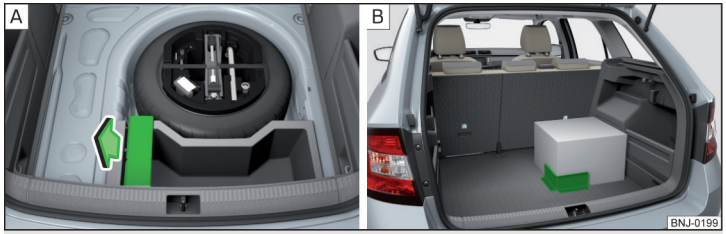


Fig. 100 **Removing cargo element/example on how to mount the load by means of the cargo element**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

› To **use** the Cargo Remove element in the direction of arrow» Fig. 100 - A.
› Use the cargo elements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats» Fig. 100 B.
› After use, secure the cargo elements in their original position.

Flexible storage compartment



Fig. 101
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on either side of the boot » Fig. 101.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

› To **use**, insert the two ends of the storage compartment into the openings in the side trim of the luggage compartment and push the shelf down to lock.
› To **Remove** grasp the storage compartment at the top edges and remove by pulling upwards and towards you.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 75 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load. ▸

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Set in the upper / lower position ____ 81
Removing/inserting ____ 81
Folding / fastening ____ 82

Set in the upper / lower position

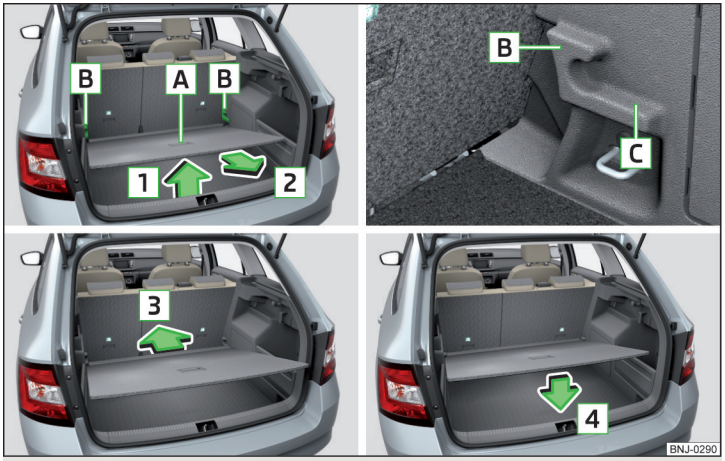


Fig. 102 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position as follows.

› Raise the variable loading floor by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and move partially in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 102.

› To **Set in the upper position**, raise the variable loading floor in the front area and lay on the edge C .

› To **Set the lower position** move the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2 until it detaches from the slots B , and place the front of the variable loading floor on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

› Lay the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 3 up to the latch and the arrow 4 .

The area under the variable loading floor can be used to stow small objects. The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position.

Removing/inserting

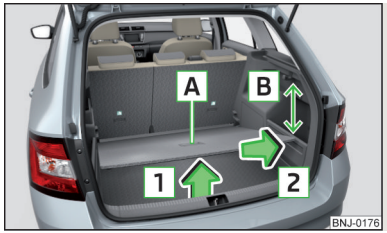


Fig. 103
Remove variable loading floor

Removing

› Lift the variable loading floor at the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the edge of the foldable cover» Fig. 103.

› Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 103.

› Insert the variable loading floor matching the front area into the vehicle about 15 cm B beneath the edge of the foldable cover.

› Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position or the lower position» page 81.

CAUTION

When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 103underneath the edge of the foldable cover must be adhered to, there is a risk of damaging the boot lid seal.

Folding / fastening



Fig. 104 **Fold up variable loading floor / secure variable loading floor**

The variable loading floor can be folded up and secured using a hook on the frame of the boot lid in the two positions (at the top as well as the bottom).

› Fold the variable loading floor together using the handle A and fold in the direction of arrow» Fig. 104.
› Hook the B hook to the frame of the boot lid.

WARNING

The folded-up variable cargo floor limits the driver's view to the rear.

CAUTION

Before closing the boot lid the variable loading floor **must be unhook from the frame**. There is the risk of damage to the hook.

Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install/remove crossmember 82
Fitting/removing the bike rack 83
Place bicycle into the carrier 84
Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt 84

up to two bicycles can be transported in the luggage compartment (maximum size - 19 "frame with 26" wheels) in a carrier.

Before transporting, the following steps must be taken.

› Remove the roll-up cover » page 79.
› Push the head rests into the seat backrests up to the latch» page 64.
› Fold the rear seats forward» page 64 and fold rear seats forward » page 63.

WARNING

When transporting bicycles, ensuring the safety of the passengers is paramount.

CAUTION

Take care handling the bicycle - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Note

The bike rack cannot be installed if the variable cargo floor is stowed in the luggage compartment.

Install/remove crossmember

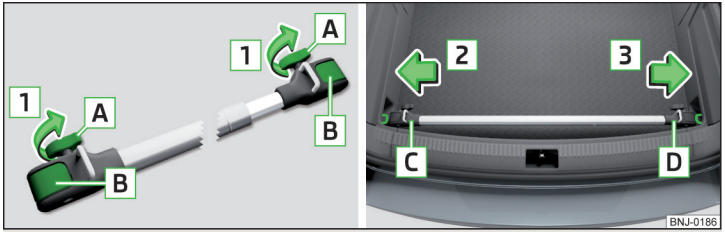


Fig. 105 **Install crossmember: Loosen the screws and unlock brackets / place crossmember on the lashing eyelets**

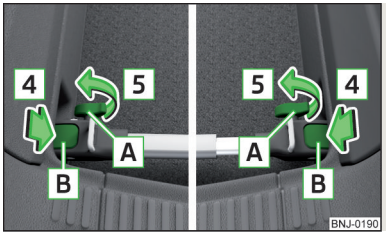


Fig. 106
Install crossmember: Tighten the screws

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To **install**complete detach the A screws in the direction of arrows 1 and pull out partially. The brackets B are unlocked » Fig. 105.
› Set the crossbar so that the screws A are pointing forward.
› Place the crossmember with the fixed part C onto the left lashing eyelet in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull out part D of the cross member and place onto the right lashing eyelet in arrow direction 3.
› Push the mounts B in the direction of arrows 4 until they click» Fig. 106.
› Turn the screws A in the direction of arrow 5 up tothe latch.
› Check how well the crossmember is fastened by pulling on it.

Removingis carried out in the reverse order.

Fitting/removing the bike rack

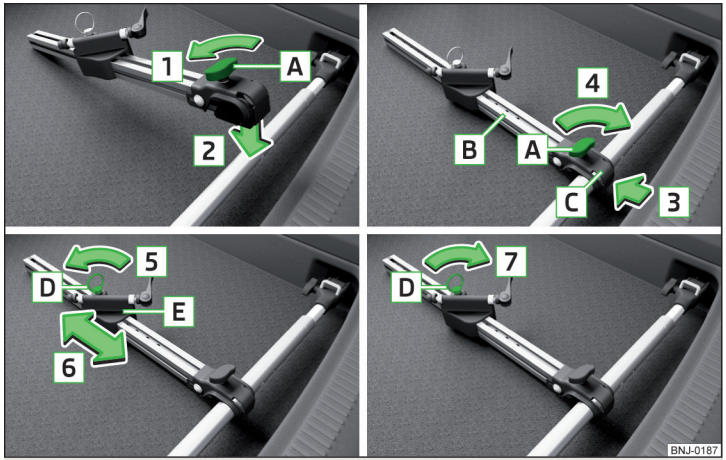


Fig. 107 **Fitting the bike rack**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To**install**, loosen screw A on the bicycle rack (hereinafter only referred to as "carrier") in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 107.
› Place the carrier of the crossmember in the direction of arrow 2.
› Hold part B of the carrier firmly and press on part C of the support in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove screw A in the direction of arrow 4.
› Screw out screw D in the direction of arrow 5 and remove.
› Place part E in the direction of arrow 6, depending on bike size, in one of the possible positions » !.
› Insert screw D and tighten in the direction of arrow 7.

Removingis carried out in the reverse order.

! CAUTION
The bike stowed in the rack must not touch either the boot lid or other vehicle parts - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle occurring.

Place bicycle into the carrier

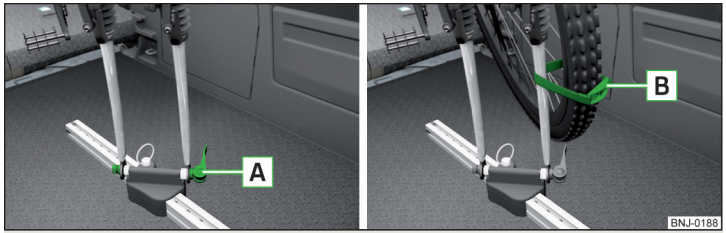


Fig. 108 **Insert the front fork of the bicycle into the carrier / mounting example of the front wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

- Remove the front wheel from the bike.
- Release the quick release A » Fig. 108 on the carrier and adjust according to the bicycle fork width.
- Place the bicycle fork on the fixing axle and tighten with the quick release A.
- Set the left bicycle pedal towards the vehicle front to secure the front wheel more easily.
- If you want to transport two bicycles, loosen screw A » Fig. 107 *on page 83* on the carrier and move the carrier along with attached bike to the left.

The handlebar must not touch the side window of the luggage compartment.

- Tighten screw A » Fig. 107 *on page 83* on the support.
- Guide the boot lid gently downwards and check while doing this that there is no contact between the handlebar and the rear window.
- If necessary, the position of the sliding part E » Fig. 107 *on page 83* can be adjusted.
- The dismantled front wheel can best be stowed between the left crank and the bicycle frame.
- Attach the front wheel with belt B to the front fork » Fig. 108 or to the bicycle frame.
- The second carrier is installed and the bicycle is secured in a similar way.

Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

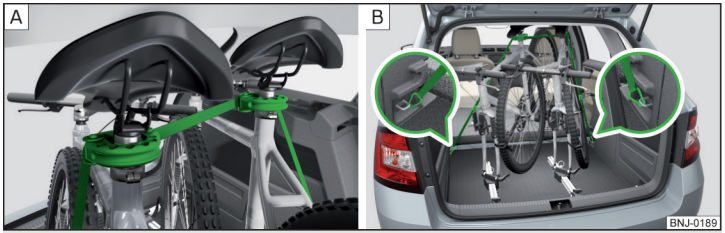


Fig. 109 **Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

- In order to loosen the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.
- Position the clamp with the rubber part in the direction of travel as low down on the saddle support as possible and close it.
- When transporting two bicycles, stretch the belt » Fig. 109 - A between the saddles by moving the bicycles apart.
- Hook the carabiners on the ends of the belt into the lower lashing eyelets behind the rear seats » Fig. 109 - B.
- Pull the belt through the tensioning clasps on both sides in turn.

If necessary, you can correct the position of the bicycles in the vehicle afterwards.

Transportation on the roof rack



Fig. 110 **Attachment points**

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 110.

The mounting and dismounting of the basic carrier is carried out in accordance with the instructions provided.

Roof load
The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed to aid road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident.

CAUTION
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note
We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Heating and manual air conditioning 86
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 87
Climatronic - automatic operation 87
Recirculated air mode 88
Air outlet vents 88

The heater heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.
- ✓ The cooling system is switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above 2 °C.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

When the cooling system is switched on, it prevents misting of the windscreen and windows.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system» page 88.

Health protection
To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
- ▸ The difference between the outside temperature and the inside temperature should not be greater than 5 °C.
- ▸ The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- ▸ Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner must be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there is a risk of accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling system **condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

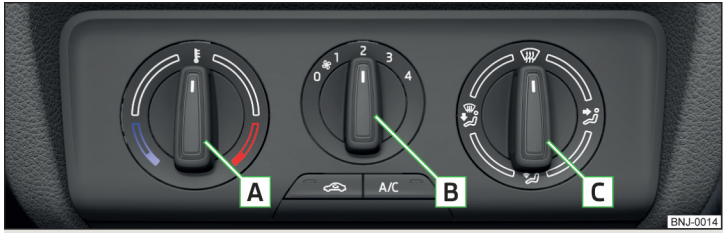


Fig. 111 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 111. When the function is activated, a warning light illuminates in the button.

A Setting temperature
▸ Reduce the temperature / Increase the temperature

B Setting the fan speed (level 0: Fan off, level 4: high-speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 88
Air flow to the windows
Air flow in the footwell
Air flow to the windows and the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 88

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Information on cooling system

After pressing the button **A/C** the indicator light on the button lights up, even if not all the conditions for the cooling system have been met. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 85.

If recirculated air mode is turned to position when the blower is on, the cooling system is switched on. The cooling system is switched off again by turning the air distribution control out of the position .

If recirculated air mode is outside position when the recirculating air mode is on, the cooling system is switched on.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 112 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 112.

1 Setting temperature
- ▶ Reduce the temperature / Increase the temperature

2 Selected temperature

3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on

5 Intense air flow turned on to the windscreen

6 Direction of air flow

7 Recirculated air mode activated

8 Cooling system activated

9 Set blower speed

10 Set the fan speed (the set fan speed is indicated by the corresponding number of segments in the display)
- ▶ Turn to the left: Decrease speed / Climatronic off
- ▶ Turn to the right: Increase speed

11 Interior temperature sensor

MAX Switching the intensive airflow to the front windscreen on/off - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 87

Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

Switch recirculation on/off » page 88

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When this function is switched on, the corresponding icon appears in the display.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Set the temperature
In the range between 16 °C to 29° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 ° C, LO lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting over 29° C, HI lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
Press the key MAX and A/C simultaneously and hold 2 s, the display shows the desired unit (item appears 3 » Fig. 112).

! CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 112 - the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

i Note
In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **switch on** press the AUTO button. The display shows AUTO (pos. 4 » Fig. 112 *on page 87*).
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature contro lis continued.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on/off**, press the button.

Heater
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation mode is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is **switched off automatically**.

Individually controlled air conditioning
Recirculated air mode is **switched on automatically** if the following conditions are met.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is outside position .
✓ The temperature controller is turned to the left.

If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation mode is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is **automatically switched off**.

Climatronic
If humidity increases in the vehicle, an automatic shutdown of air recirculation can occur.

! WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because no fresh air is fed through from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as windows mist up, turn on the recirculation system immediately - The is a risk of an accident!

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from the interior is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlet vents

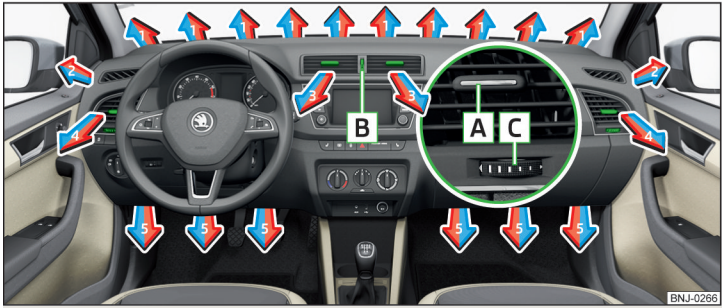


Fig. 113 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 113, the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

The setting of the airflow direction is carried out by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 113or in the desired direction.

Opening
› Turn the regulator B upwards » Fig. 113.
› Turn the regulator B to the right.

Closing
› Turn the regulator B downwards » Fig. 113.
› Turn the regulator B to the left.

Depending on the setting for air distribution, the air will flow from the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air outlet vents » Fig. 113
/	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5
	3. 4
	4. 5

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Driving

Starting-off and driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock ____ 90
Switch on/off ignition ____ 91
Starting / stopping the engine ____ 91
Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button ____ 92

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- While driving with the engine stopped the ignition must always be switched on. Otherwise, the steering may lock - The is a danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 94, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 90 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

Immobiliser

The immobiliser allows the engine to start provided an original vehicle key only is used.

Malfunction of the immobiliser

If a component in the immobiliser key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - locking

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, then move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, as a result of which the steering lock should unlock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the vehicle and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - risk of accident!

Switch on/off ignition

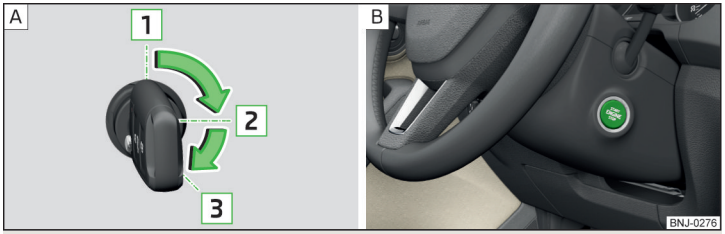


Fig. 114 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 90 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 114 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the» Fig. 114 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting / stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 90 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » ! depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 114 *on page 91* A. Then release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after 30 s.

› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button briefly» Fig. 114 *on page 91* - B, the motor will start automatically.

For vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Switching the engine off

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with**ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 114 *on page 91* A.
› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button» Fig. 114 *on page 91* - B, The engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey if the engine has been working at high revs over a prolonged period, but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed» Fig. 114 *on page 91* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may (also intermittently) continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button



Fig. 115
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 90 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 115.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 92
Manually deactivating/activating ____ 93

The START-STOP system (hereinafter only referred to as "system") reduces the CO_2 emissions, as well as harmful emissions and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them must be met by the driver, the others are related to the system and cannot be influenced nor recognised.

For this reason, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every time** the ignition is switched on (even if this was manually deactivated using the key).

Note

If the engine was stopped by the system, the ignition remains on.

Operation

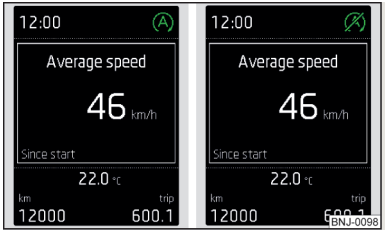


Fig. 116
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The motor is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is shifted to the neutral position and the clutch pedal is released.

The motor is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The motor is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a standstill and the brake pedal is actuated.

The motor is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function

The following conditions are required for the correct system function.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

System status

The system status is shown on the display » Fig. 116 when stopped.

Ⓐ The engine is automatically switched off; when driving off again, the engine is started automatically.

The motor is not automatically switched off.

The engine does not shut down when the vehicle stops, if e.g. the following applies.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine has shut down automatically but the system detects that the engine is required to run (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly) then the system automatically starts up the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed on the Infotainment screen» *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened after the engine has switched off automatically, the engine will have to be restarted manually.
▪ No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
▪ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating



Fig. 117
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate** the system, press the button» Fig. 117.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol in the button lights up.

If the system is deactivated, then it is automatically activated again after switching the ignition off and on.

Note

If the system is automatically deactivated when the engine is turned off, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and Parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 94
Parking 94

The **wear and tear** on the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. In difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving), the condition of the brakes should be checked between service intervals by a specialist garage.

Brake response can be slower if the brakes **are covered in moisture or, in winter, have a layer of ice or salt on them**. The brakes should be cleaned and dried by applying the brakes many times over » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times over » !.

Before negotiating a **long or steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift down a gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If, nevertheless, there is a need for additional braking, it should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking warning - If it is necessary to brake hard, the system may cause the brake lights to automatically flash, to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be""run in"" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

If the **brake fluid level** is too low, it can cause **faults in the braking system**; the warning light will light up in the instrument cluster » page 29, *Braking system*. If the warning light does not light up, yet the stopping distance is perceived to be longer than before, the driving style should be adapted in view of the unknown cause of the problem, and braking kept to a minimum - seek the help of a specialist garage without delay.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident.
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not depress the brake pedal, if there is no requirement to slow down. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - The is a risk of an accident!
- Only brake for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads should be followed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - The is a risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the front brakes could be in danger of overheating – The is a risk of an accident!

Handbrake



Fig. 118
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Undoing

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **while** pushing in the locking button » Fig. 118.

› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **Automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission**, select **first gear** or **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

▪ The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle in places where the underside of your vehicle could come into contact with flammable materials (e.g. dry grass, leaves, spilled fuel etc.) There is a risk of a fire and could result in severe injuries!
▪ When leaving the vehicle never leave people unattended in the car who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake - The is a risk of accidents and injury!

Manual gear shifting and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 95
Pedals 95

Manual gear changing

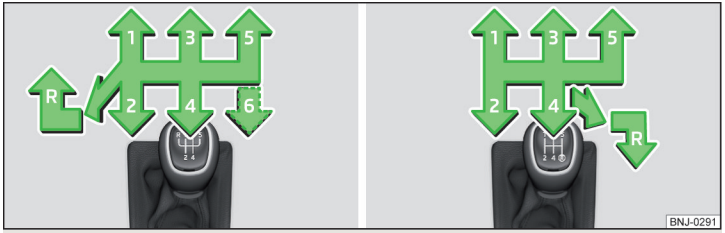


Fig. 119 **The shift pattern: Variant 1 (5-speed or 6-speed manual gearbox)/ variant 2 (5-speed transmission with the 1.0 litre MPI engine)**

On the gear lever, the shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown » Fig. 119.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 37.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engage reverse gear - Version 1
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 119.

Selecting reverse gear - variant 2 (applies to the 1.0 l MPI motor)
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Wait briefly.
› Push down on the shift lever, then push fully over to the right and then backwards, to position **R**.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

Only a floor mat (ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range) which can be secured to the attachment points should be used in the driver's footwell.

WARNING

There should be no objects in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation can be impeded - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Select selector lever position ____ 96
Selector lever lock ____ 97
Manual shifting (Tiptronic) ____ 97
Starting-off and driving ____ 98

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not accelerate when selecting drive mode prior to moving off - The is a risk of an accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – The is a risk of an accident!
- If the vehicle stalls with the engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal, parking brake or using the Auto Hold function. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle may start to move - risk of accident.

CAUTION

If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.

Select selector lever position

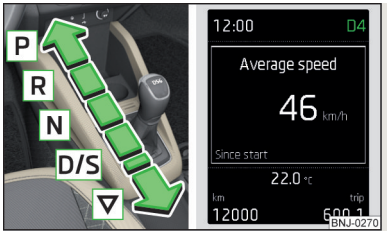


Fig. 120
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The selector lever can be moved through shifting to one of the following positions » Fig. 120. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 97.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 120.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - The position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

Selector lever lock



Fig. 121
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)

› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 121 .

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 160.

Note

If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual shifting (Tiptronic)

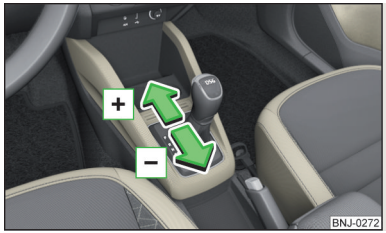


Fig. 122
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while halted and while driving.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Changing gear

› To **change up**, tap the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 122.
› To **change down**, tap the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 122.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 120 *on page 96* display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 37.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be advantageous to use manual gear shifting when driving downhill, for example. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 96 first.

Moving off and pausing temporarily
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 96.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time (e.g. at a crossroads). However, the brake pedal should be depressed, in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Accelerating at maximum speed during the journey (kickdown function)
If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the vehicle is in forward drive mode, the kick-down function is turned on.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to achieve maximum acceleration.

! WARNING
Rapid acceleration (e.g. on slippery roads) can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle – There is a risk of accident!

Running in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running in the engine 98
Tips on economical driving 98
DriveGreen function 98

Running in the engine

During the first 1 500 km, the driving style is decisive for successful the running in process is.

During the first 1 000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

From about **1 000 to 1 500 km** the engine can be pushed up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips on economical driving

Fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road and weather conditions, and similar such factors.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.
▸ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
▸ Observe the recommended gear » page 37.
▸ Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
▸ Reduce idling.
▸ Avoid short distances.
▸ Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained » page 146.
▸ Avoid unnecessary ballast.
▸ Remove the roof rack before driving if it is not needed.
▸ Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as necessary.
▸ Briefly ventilate before turning on the cooling system, do not use the cooling system with the windows open.
▸ Do not leave windows open at high speeds.

DriveGreen function

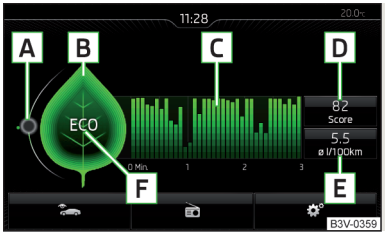


Fig. 123
Shown in the infotainment display

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as "DriveGreen") evaluates the driving efficiency based on information relating to the driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the function interface display → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking. ▸

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

If the driving is not fluid, drive with anticipation

3▸4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving
Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note
Resetting the single-trip memory "from start" also resets the average consumption E and the driving assessment D.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips 99
Driving through water 99

Driving Tips

Only drive on roads and terrain that correspond to the vehicle parameters» page 173, *Technical data*.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can cope with the conditions and the terrain.

WARNING
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION
- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. to parts of the fuel or brake system).

Driving through water

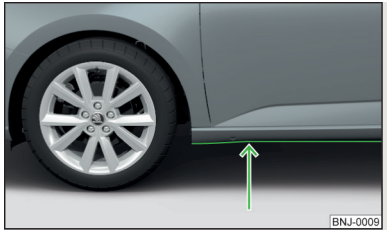


Fig. 124
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water. The water level must not go above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 124.
› Drive at no more than walking pace, otherwise a wave may form in front of the vehicle, which could cause the water to enter into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

▪ If water gets into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine) it can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
▪ Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
▪ Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor ____ 100

WARNING

▪ The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
▪ The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
▪ Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
▪ The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
▪ Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems so that you have the car fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor



Fig. 125
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 100 first.

The radar sensor» Fig. 125 (hereinafter on referred to as sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle.

The sensor is part of the ACC» page 110 and Front Assist» page 114systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow etc.).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights etc.).
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is covered or dirty, the corresponding message appears in the instrument cluster display for the ACC system» page 114, *Malfunctions*or Front Assist system » page 116, *Malfunctions*.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 111, » page 116. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC) 101
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 101
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 101
Traction control (TCS) 102
Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS) 102
Brake Assist (HBA) 102
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 102
Multi collision brake (MCB) 103

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 28, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe on page 101 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability when driving at the limit (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by braking individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

If there is a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe on page 101 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not pump the brakes or lift off the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe on page 101 first.

MSR counteracts the tendency of the drive wheels to lock during downshifts or sudden deceleration (e.g. on icy or an otherwise slippery road surface).

If the drive wheels should lock, then the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)



Fig. 126
Key for the TCS system

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The **deactivation/activation** of TCS can be carried out, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
- Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.
- By pressing the » Fig. 126 button.

During **deactivation** the warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster **and** an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

During **activation extinguished** the warning light is and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes a spinning wheel if required and transfers the drive power force to the other drive wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). XDS does not respond to the relieved inner curve wheel of the driven axle in the case of fast cornering.

By applying braking force to the relieved wheel, spinning is prevented by the XDS. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very rapid depression of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

When moving off on a gradient, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The HHC is active on gradients upwards of 5 % if the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes pulling away forwards or in reverse.

Multi collision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 103
Display in the Infotainment display 104
Activation / deactivation 105
Automatic system activation when moving forward 105

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as "system") draws attention to obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle via acoustic signals or on the Infotainment display when manoeuvring.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! WARNING (Continued)

- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should satisfy yourself that there are no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 127 *on page 103* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the functioning of the system may be impaired - "incorrect recognition of obstacles".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Function

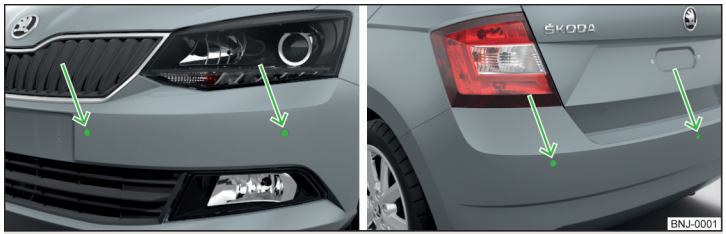


Fig. 127 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front / rear**

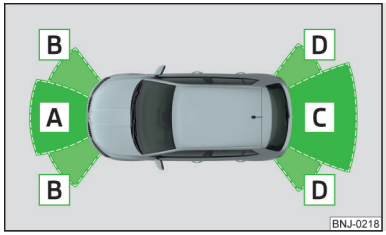


Fig. 128
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 127.

Depending on the equipment, the following system variants are possible » Fig. 128.
▸ Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
▸ Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 128	Variant 1 (3 sensors)	Variant 2 (7 sensors)
A	-	120
B	-	60
C	160	160
D	60	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area. **From this moment do not continue to move towards the obstacle!**

The acoustic signals can be set in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B» Fig. 128 are active in the system.

Note
The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display in the Infotainment display

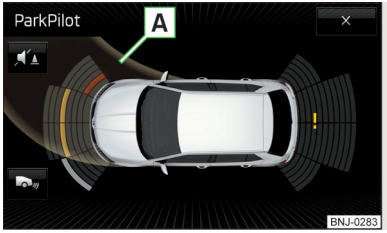


Fig. 129
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 129

A	Road display.
✖ / ⮌	Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.
/	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
	There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!
	There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
	An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 129indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 130
System key (option 2)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or vehicles with the **variant 2**, also by pressing the button P » Fig. 130.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol P illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **variant 2**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the P button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

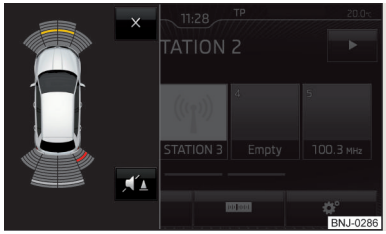


Fig. 131
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 131.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Reversing camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 106
Guidelines and function interfaces 106

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (following as display).

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 132, *Exterior car care*.

CAUTION

- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note

The camera can be equipped with a cleaning system » page 60. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

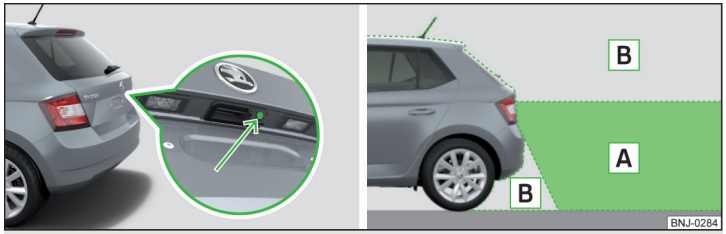


Fig. 132 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 132.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 132

A Detection range of the camera

B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
- ✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
- ✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Note

- The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 130 *on page 105*.
- After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 103.

Guidelines and function interfaces

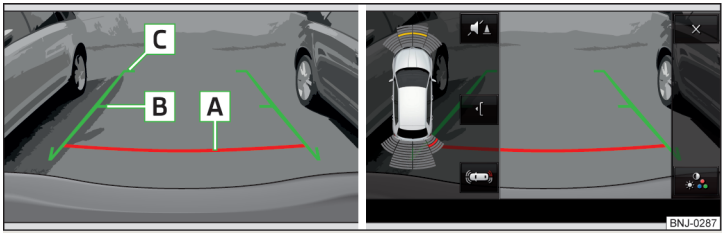


Fig. 133 **Infotainment Display: Orientation lines / functional surfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 133

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Functional surfaces » Fig. 133

✖ / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment Type: Turns the display of the area behind the vehicle off
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off
/ Enabling and reduced park assistance display
Change to park assistance display

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 107
Operation description 108

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

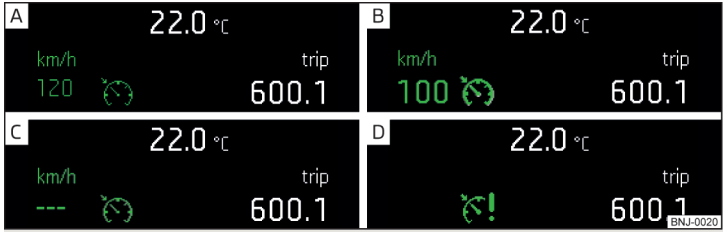


Fig. 134 **Maxi DOT display: Examples of status displays the CCS**



Fig. 135 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 134, » Fig. 135

A Speed set, but control is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The CCS is activated.
✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The current speed is higher than 20 km/h.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

WARNING

If the engine output or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must assume control of the accelerator and brake pedals!

Operation description

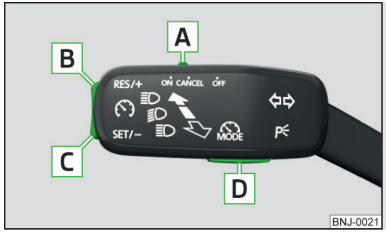


Fig. 136
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 107 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 136

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Start control / reduce speed
D	**MODE**	Switch between GRA and Speed Limiter

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

Once the controls are activated, the CCS maintains the vehicle at the set speed; the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Controls are automatically interrupted if any of the following occur.
▸ The brake pedal is operated.
▸ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
▸ Through an airbag deployment.
▸ By pressing the button D.

WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being enabled unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the button D during the control this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed limiter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 109
Description of operation 109

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

This limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter monitors a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, ! in section *Introduction*.

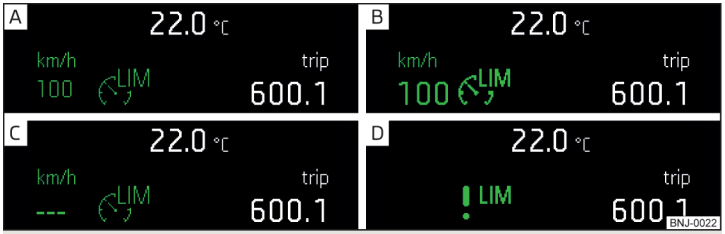


Fig. 137 **Maxi DOT display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**



Fig. 138 **Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 108 first.

Status displays of the speed limiter» Fig. 137, » Fig. 138

A Speed limit set, but regulation is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed limit set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
✓ The current speed is higher than 30 km/h.

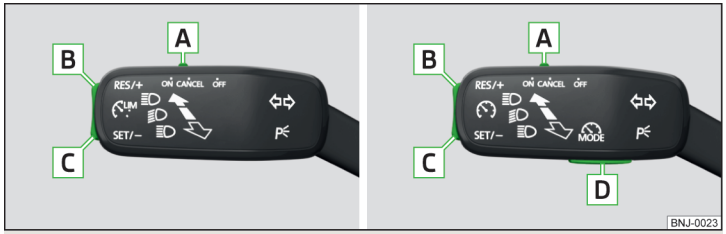


Fig. 139 **Operating elements of the speed limiter: Vehicle with Speed Limiter / vehicle with GRA and Speed Limiter**

Read and observe ! on page 108 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 139

A	**ON**	Activate Speed Limiter (regulation deactivated) For vehicles with GRA and Speed Limiter, the GRA is activated by the switch in the **ON** position by being adjusted. The activation of the speed limiter occurs only after pressing the button D.
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a]/ increase speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/–**	Start control/ reduce speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D	**MODE**	Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation
If, during the setting, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When exceeding the speed limit (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Note

By pressing the button D during the control this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 110
Automatic stop-start 111
Operation overview 111
Start control 112
Stop/resume control 112
Set/change the desired speed 112
Set the clearance level 113
Special driving conditions 113
Overtaking and towing 114
Malfunctions 114

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 100.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving into "sharp" corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Operation

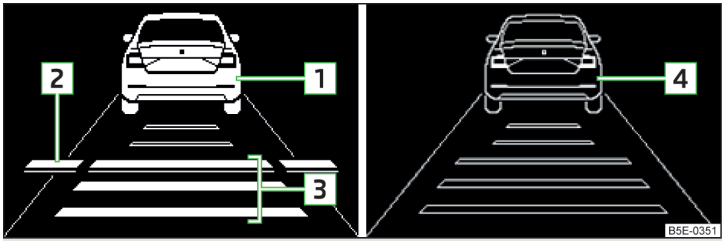


Fig. 140 **Display of the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC displays**

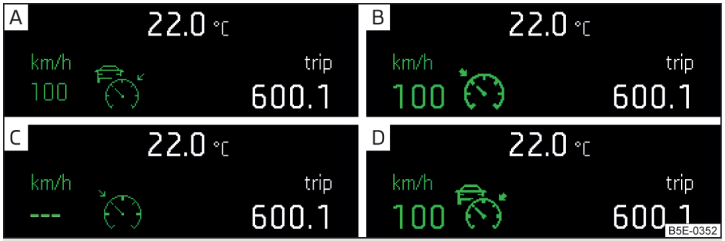


Fig. 141 **Display of the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The ACC allows a speed of 30-160 km/h to be set or a distance to the preceding vehicle to be very short of very long to be set.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC display » Fig. 140

1 Vehicle detected (control active)
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 113, *Set the clearance level*
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

ACC status displays » Fig. 141

A Control deactivated.
B Control activated - no vehicle detected.
C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
D Control activated (vehicle detected).

Note to reduce speed
If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stop-start

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a complete stop and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a complete stop
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a complete stop.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be controlled. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Operation overview

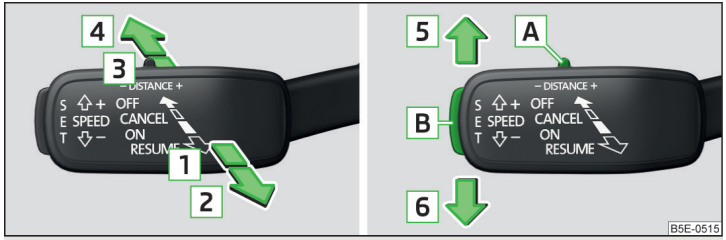


Fig. 142 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 142

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	**RESUME**	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Interrupt control (sprung position)

4	**OFF**	Deactivate ACC
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	**– DISTANCE +**	Set proximity level
B	**SET**	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The ACC is activated.

✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 25 km/h.

✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission** the selector lever is in the position **D / S** or in the Tiptronic position and the current speed is higher than 2 km / h.

Start control

› Press the button **SET** » Fig. 142 *on page 111* press.

› **Or** Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » Fig. 142 *on page 111* set.

The ACC takes the current driving speed and performs the control, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the control is started by moving the lever to the position **RESUME** and should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 142 *on page 111* set.

› **Or** Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 112, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Set/change the desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 142 *on page 111*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET- requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.

✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 112.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set the clearance level

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever» Fig. 142 *on page 111* or in the Infotainment» *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** Adjust in the spring-tensioned position **–** or **+** » Fig. 142 *on page 111*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 140 *on page 110*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line 2 to the desired distance.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.

Special driving conditions

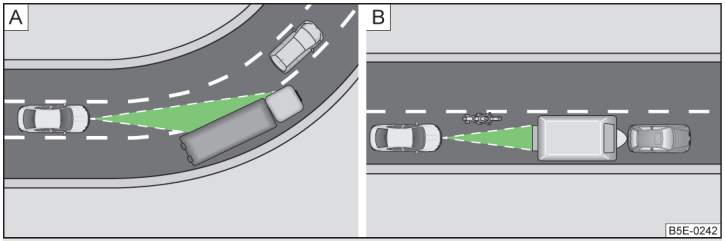


Fig. 143 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

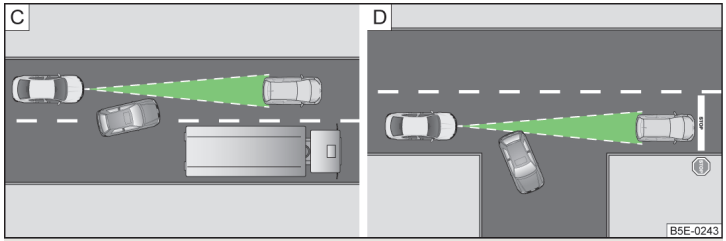


Fig. 144 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering

When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar» Fig. 143 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar» Fig. 143 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance» Fig. 144 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle,» Fig. 144 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the lever » Fig. 142 *on page 111*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

If, for some unknown reason, ACC is not available, the warning light **!** appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles» Fig. 125 *on page 100*.

ACC not available
If the ACC is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 114
Distance warning 115
Warning and automatic braking 115
Deactivation/activation 116
Malfunctions 116

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as "system") warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» page 100.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

! CAUTION
In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 102.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h. ▶

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 101.

Distance warning

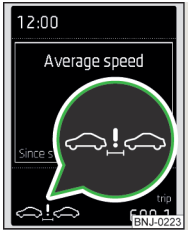


Fig. 145
Instrument cluster display: Distance warning

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is fallen short of, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 145.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 146
Instrument cluster display: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 146.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal » Fig. 146.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Deactivation/activation

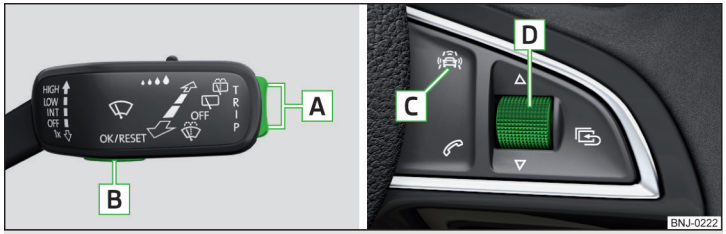


Fig. 147 **Buttons / Dial: on the operating lever / the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated/deactivated in the main menu » page 41, *Menu item* **assist systems**.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 147	Action	Operation
A	Hold up / down	Show Front Assist menu item
B	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 147	Action	Operation
C	Press	Show Front Assist menu item
D	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In Infotainment, the entire system or the functions warning and distance warning can be deactivated/activated» *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

If the distance-warning function was deactivated before switching off the ignition, it remains deactivated after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles» Fig. 125 *on page 100*.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to as "system") recommends the driver takes a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected due to the driver's steering behaviour.

From the starting of the journey, the system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds 65-200 km/h. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system
- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Pause recommendation
The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note
- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing the tyre pressure values 117
Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display 118
Storing the tire pressure values using the key 118

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter known as "system") monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal sounds» page 32, *Tyre pressure*.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed tyre pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 100, in section *Introduction*.
- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility. The tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 146.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture.

Storing the tyre pressure values

Read and observe on page 117 first.

The tyre pressure valuesare always stored in the system, if one of the following events is present.
- Change of tyre pressure values.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light in the instrument cluster.

The storage of the tyre pressure values depends on equipment, either in the infotainment or by pressing a button.

WARNING
Before storing the tyre pressures they must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 146. If incorrect pressure values are storedthe system may not warn even with a tyre pressure that is too low.

CAUTION
The tyre pressure values should be stored every 10 000 km or once a year to ensure proper system function.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

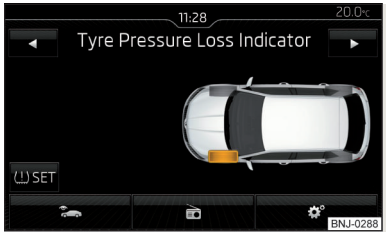


Fig. 148
Button for storing the pressure values / of the display: the system indicates a front left tyre change

Read and observe ! on page 117 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the function interfaces Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function interfaces ◁ ▷ Select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Tap on the function **SET** Tap on» Fig. 148.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 148.

Storing the tire pressure values using the key



Fig. 149
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 117 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol key » Fig. 149 on the button.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light extinguishes informs that the storage of the tyre pressure values has taken place.

› Press the symbol key .

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 119
Adjusting the ready position 120
Check the setting of the standby position 120
Assembling the bar ball - Step 1 120
Assembling the bar ball - Step 2 121
Check proper fitting 121
Removing the bar ball - Step 1 122
Removing the bar ball - Step 2 122
Vertical load with mounted accessories 123

The maximum trailer nose weight when towing a trailer is **50 kg**. Other data (e.g. shown onthe nameplate of the hitch) on provides information about the test values of the device .

WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- When the knee-joint bar is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, it is damaged or incomplete, this must not be used - there is a risk of an accident.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

Description

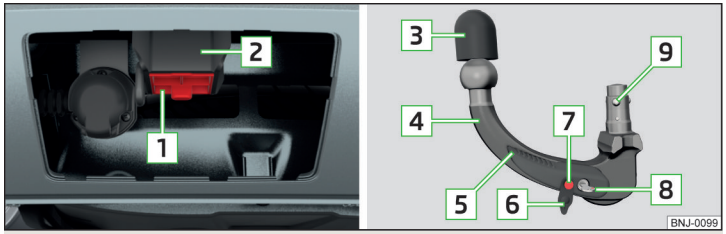


Fig. 150 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

The knee-joint bar is detachable and is located in the storage compartment for the spare / emergency wheel.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 150

1 Cover for the mounting recess
2 Mounting recess
3 Dust cap
4 Ball head
5 Operating lever
6 Lock cap
7 Release pin
8 Key
9 Locking ball

Adjusting the ready position

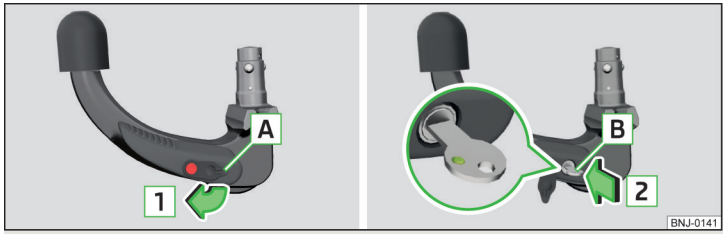


Fig. 151 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

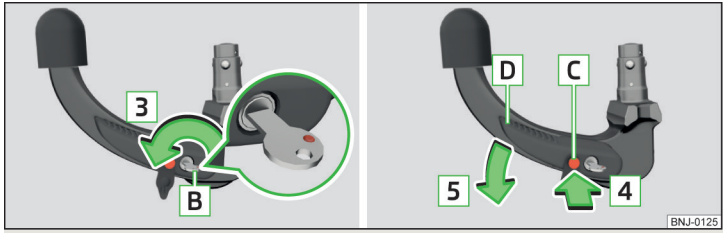


Fig. 152 **Lock unlock / press release bolt and lever and push**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

The tow bar must be set prior to installation to the standby position » page 120, *Check the setting of the standby position*.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 151.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward.
› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking points upwards » Fig. 152.
› Push in the release bolt C in the direction of arrow 4 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever D in the direction of arrow 5 until it stops.

The operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

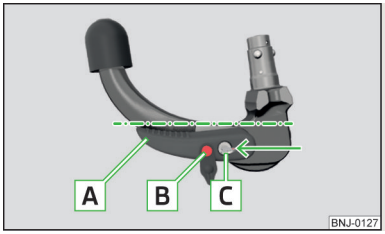


Fig. 153
Ready position

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 153
✓ The operating lever A is locked in the lower position.
✓ The release bolts B can be moved.
✓ The red mark on the key C is pointing upwards.

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed or turned into a different position.

Assembling the bar ball - Step 1

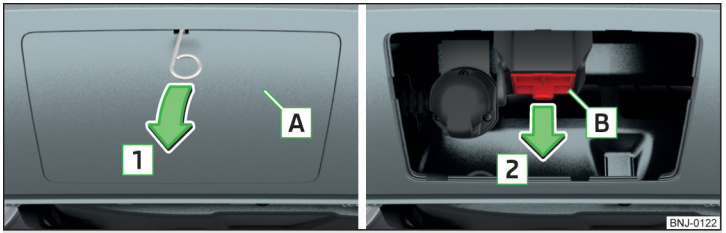


Fig. 154 **Removing cap: on the rear bumper / for the receiving shaft**

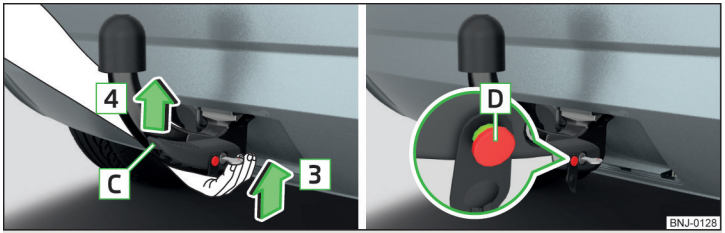


Fig. 155 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

The tow bar must be set to the standby position » page 120.

Preparing installation

› Remove the cover cap A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 154using the on-board tool clamp for pulling off the wheel trims.
› Remove cover cap B in the direction of arrow 2 » !.

Fitting

› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 155 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 3 until you hear it click into place » !.

The operating lever C **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 4 and the release pin D pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the operating lever C does not turn automatically, or if the release pin D does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the operating lever C downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess B - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the operating lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head – there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

Assembling the bar ball - Step 2

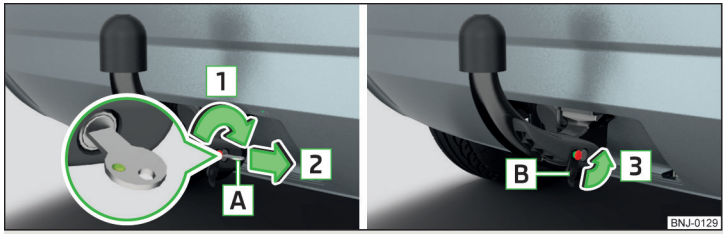


Fig. 156 **Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

› Turn the key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking points upwards » Fig. 156.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit and press in the cap B on the hand-wheel lock in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Check the ball head for secure mounting » page 121, *Check proper fitting*.

Check proper fitting

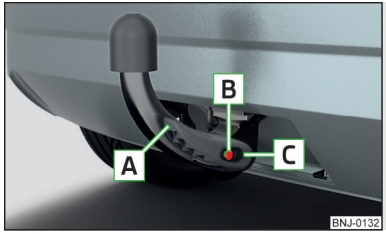


Fig. 157
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 157

✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ Operating lever A is located as far up as possible.

✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed and the cap C attached to the lock.

Removing the bar ball - Step 1

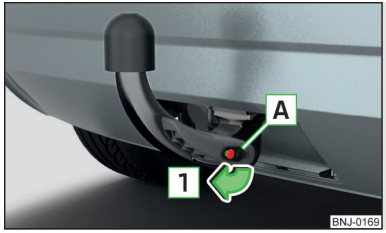


Fig. 158
Remove the cap from the lock

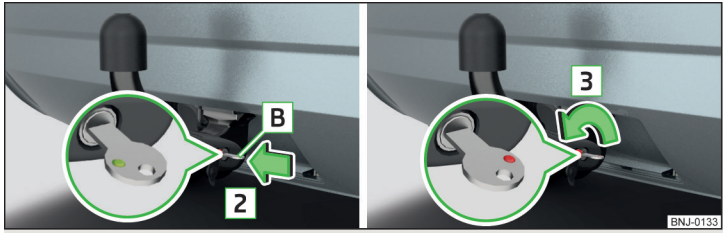


Fig. 159 **Insert the key into the lock / unlock the lock**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 158.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward » Fig. 159.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking points upwards.

Removing the bar ball - Step 2

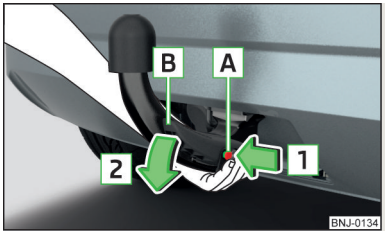


Fig. 160
Release tow bar

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Removing

› Grasp the ball head from **underneath** » Fig. 160.
› Push in the release bolt A in the direction of arrow 1 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 until it stops.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

Subsequent steps

› Insert the cover B » Fig. 154 *on page 120* in the opposite direction to arrow 2.
› Fix the cap A » Fig. 154 *on page 120* aligning it with "check mark" in the lower bumper area.
› Push the cap in first on the left and right and then at the top.

If the operating lever B is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The knee-joint bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed» page 120, *Adjusting the ready position*.

The knee-joint bar must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!

CAUTION

- Place the tow bar in the standby position, with the key upwards, and store in the box - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

Vertical load with mounted accessories

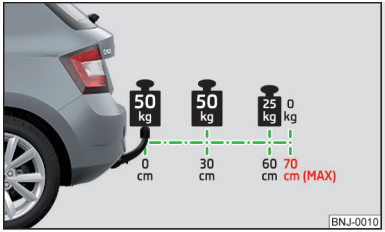


Fig. 161
Representation of the maximum length of the mounted accessories and the permissible total weight of the accessory depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** » Fig. 161.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	50 kg
30 cm	50 kg
60 cm	25 kg
70 cm	0 kg

CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories - risk of damage to the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use the accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using hitch

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

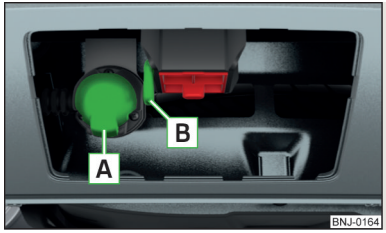


Fig. 162
Housing of the 13 pin socket, safety eyelet

Connect and disconnect

› Install the ball bar and the remove the protective cap 3 » Fig. 150 *on page 119* lose weight.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the tow ball.
› Plug the trailer cable into 13-pin socket A » Fig. 162. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 53, *Operating the lights*.

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - The is a risk of accident!

CAUTION

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected loads to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for "full load"» page 146.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Nevertheless, maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

WARNING

An unsecured load can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Trailer

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load - Fabia

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.0 l/44 kW MPI	MG	800	1000	520
1.0 l./55 kW MPI	MG	800	1000	520
1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI	MG	1000	1100	550
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1100	1100	560
	DSG	1100	1100	570
1.6 l./66 kW MPI	MG	1100	1200	540
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	AG	1100	1200	560
1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR	MG	1000	1100	570

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%[a]	
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1100	1200	570
	DSG	1100	1200	590
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR	MG	1100	1200	580

[a] Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Fabia Combi

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a]	
1.0 l./55 kW MPI	MG	800	1000	530
1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI	MG	1000	1100	560
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1100	1100	570
	DSG	1100	1100	580
1.6 l./66 kW MPI	MG	1100	1200	550
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	AG	1100	1200	570
1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR	MG	1000	1100	590
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1100	1200	590
	DSG	1100	1200	600
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR	MG	1100	1200	590

[a] Only valid for some countries.

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 49.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions 127
Statutory checks 127
ŠKODA service partner 127
ŠKODA Original parts 128
ŠKODA Original accessories 128
Spoiler 128
Component protection 128
Airbags 128
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 129

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when using accessories or carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Compliance with these guidelines and instructions is in the interest of the roadworthiness and technical condition of your vehicle.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist. Work carried out incorrectly (including work on the electronic components and their software) can result in malfunctions - there is a risk of accident and, potentially, increased wear on parts!
- We recommend that you use only ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- Do not use any products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, even though these may be products with a type approval or which have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

If you would like you operate your vehicle in countries other than its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner. He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, changing the battery or similar).

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability, safety and, where applicable, roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at regular intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorised for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service partners can prepare your vehicle for the official inspections, so as to ensure that it passes.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation for a legally required test, we recommend that you consult your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

ŠKODA service partner

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

You should note the following if you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch the suitability of other products for your vehicle, despite the fact that some products may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with a Genuine Accessories spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle can only be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- A Genuine Accessories spoiler cannot be fitted to the front bumper either on its own (without a spoiler on the boot lid) or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the boot lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Unprofessional work carried out on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in some functions/vehicle systems malfunctioning.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

! WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system – there is the risk of an accident and fatal injury.
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can impair the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to airbag system components, the front bumper and the bodywork.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must be replaced.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can impair the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive the vehicle with the inner door panels removed or with openings in the panelling.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of service intervals 130
Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4 130
Variable service interval QI6 130
Digital Service Plan 131

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting any» page 41.

The completion of services can be verified through the printed verification from the digital service schedule and the respective receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of aggravated operating conditions, it will be necessary to have some service work carried out before the date of the next regular service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

The following is taken to mean aggravated operating conditions:

- Fuel containing sulphur.
- Frequent short trips.
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis).
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution.
- Frequent trailer operation.
- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is e.g. often the case in city driving.
- Operation predominantly during winter.

You will be told at the specialist garage whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply according to the particular scope of work required, the vehicle type and specification, and your vehicle's condition.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the service checks and actions at each service by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

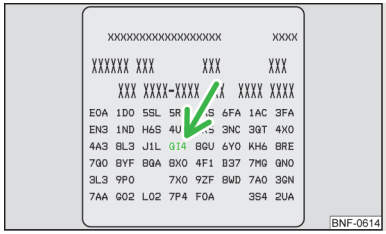


Fig. 163
Vehicle data: Service Interval

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data carrier» Fig. 163 which can be found both in this Owner's Manual as well as in the vehicle.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI1.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI2.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI3.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI4.
- ▸ Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the prescribed engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 139.
- For vehicles with variable service interval QI6 you can initiate a change to the fixed service interval or back to the variable service interval to be carried out by a specialist garage.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

Oil change service	QI1	Every 5 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7 500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 1	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2		Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 3		Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – There is a risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, an oil change service must be carried out every 7 500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

The oil change service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different demands when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The intervals are therefore **variable**.

Oil change service	In accordance with the service interval display (after 30 000 km or 2 years[a] at the latest).
Inspection[b] Variant 1	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes –There is a risk of accident!

Digital Service Plan

A specialist garage will not record the work carried out in a service evidence in this Owner's Manual, but in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

We therefore recommend that you always have the record of work carried out in a service printed out for you.

Benefits of the Digital Service Plan

- High level of security preventing manipulation of the entries.
- Transparent documentation of service work carried out.
- Protection against loss or damage of the entries – you receive a complete service record of the work carried out, if required.
- Option to receive the record in electronic form.
- The vehicle can be serviced in any specialist garage (also abroad) – the database is accessible worldwide.
- Increased transparency when purchasing a used vehicle due to entries being stored centrally.
- The system entries support you in making a claim on the ŠKODA extended warranty and mobility guarantees.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car washing 131
Exterior car care 132
Removing ice and snow from the windows 133
Caring for the interior 134

Regular and thorough care helps to retain the value of your vehicle.

The instructions for use on the packaging must be observed when using care products. We recommend that you use ŠKODA Original Accessories care products.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - There is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, kitchen scrubbers or similar cleaning products – there is a risk of damaging the paintwork finish.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - danger of damaging the surface to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and maintained at a ŠKODA service partner.

Car washing

Read and observe and on page 131 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is also essential to thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, with a soft sponge or a wash mitt and plenty of water, and, if necessary, with the appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

For wheels, door sills and lower areas of the vehicle use a different sponge.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic Car Washes
The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle (e.g. closing the windows and the tilt/slide roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts (e.g. spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc.), it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the wiper blades should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure Washers
When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to instructions regarding the **pressure** and **spraying distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING
- Washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – there is the risk of an accident.
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury from sharp metal parts!

CAUTION
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be no more than 60 °C max. - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - There is a risk of damage.
- For vehicles with a roof antenna, the antenna rod should be unscrewed before driving through a car wash - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION
Washing the vehicle with high-pressure cleaners
- Films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - risk of damage.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- Hold a large spraying distance to the rear camera lens, to plastic parts (e.g. Roof racks, spoilers, protective strips and the like), as well as soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Exterior car care

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax preserve (at least twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Paint has gone matt	Use polish, then wax (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose
Chrome and anodised parts	Soiling	clear water, cloth, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose, clean then polish with a soft dry cloth
Films	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Windows and door mirrors	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Head / tail lights	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow/ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinders	Snow/ice	De-icing fluid specifically for that purpose
Wipers / wiper blades	Soiling	Windscreen cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then apply appropriate substance

[a)] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of cavities
All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected by a layer of long-lasting protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. The films age and become brittle, which is normal; this shall not be considered a fault.

The sunlight may also affect the depth of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box, etc.), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. due to rockfall from the secured load).

CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Repair damaged areas as soon as possible.
  - Matt-painted parts should not be treated with polishes or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply polish to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint polish.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Films**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of film damage.
  - Do not use dirty cloths or sponges for cleaning.
  - Do not use a scraper or other means to remove ice and snow.
  - Do not polish the films
  - Do not use a high pressure cleaner on the films.
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides deal with anything - the protective varnish coating could be damaged.
- **Windows and door mirrors**
  - Do not clean the insides of the windows/mirrors with sharp objects - risk of damage to the filaments or the antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth which has been used to polish the body - this could dirty the window and impair visibility.
- **Head / tail lights**
  - Do not wipe head/tail lamps dry, do not use any sharp objects - risk of damage to the protective coating and cracks forming on the headlamp glass covers.
- **Reversing camera**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinders**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy soiling of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - the result can be a vibration, which can cause premature wear of the steering.

Removing ice and snow from the windows

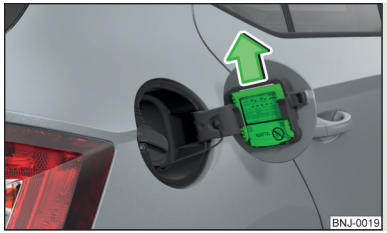


Fig. 164
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe and on page 131 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 164.

CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted to the vehicle by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Material	Dust, surface soiling	Vacuum cleaner
	Soiling (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe off with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Cleaning fluid specifically for this task
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a leather protecting fluid / use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning
	Care (Alcantara® / material)	Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove" Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, if necessary cleaners specifically for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Covers on electrically heated seats	Soiling	Cleaners specifically for this purpose
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- **Natural leather /Faux leather / Alcantara® / material**
  - Avoid standing for lengthy periods in bright sunlight, and protect the materials by covering to prevent them from fading.
  - Remove fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish and similar) as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams - risk of damaging the leather!
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use leather cleaners, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this could lead to clearly visible discolouration on the upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage will not be recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers on electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean either with water or with other liquids - risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - After cleaning the belts, allow them to dry before retracting them.

Note

During vehicle use, some minor changes may become visible on the leather and Alcantara®(due to e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

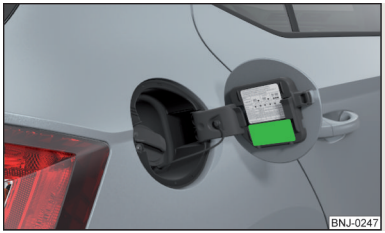


Fig. 165
Stickers showing the prescribed fuel

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling with petrol and diesel _____ 135
Unleaded petrol _____ 135
Diesel fuel _____ 136

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 165.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **45 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

WARNING

The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than the one for which it was intended, please talk to a ŠKODA Partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in that country and/or whether the manufacturer will sanction operating the vehicle with another fuel.

Refuelling with petrol and diesel

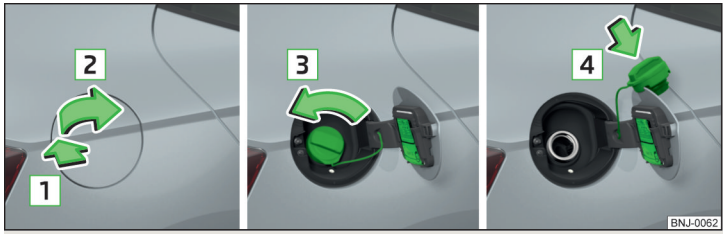


Fig. 166 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 166.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Do not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 165 *on page 135*.

The vehicle can only operate with **unleaded petrol** that meets standard **EN 228**[1], and contains **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **91 ,92** or. **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency**, **91**. **92** or**93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » .

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- **Lower** than **91** octane petrol should not be used, even in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

CAUTION

Petrol additions (additives)
- Unleaded petrol complying with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for problem-free engine operation. We therefore do not recommend mixing fuel additives into the petrol - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives may not be used - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using the prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can lead to an increase in power and reduction in fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 165 *on page 135*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **diesel fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 590**[2] and contains a **maximum** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
- The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95.
[2] In Germany DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460 / Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460 / Bharat III.
[3] In Germany complying with standard DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives

▪ The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 138
Engine compartment overview 138
Windscreen washer fluid 139

WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire.

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area.

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

▪ Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
▪ Firmly apply the handbrake.
▪ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, move the lever to the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
▪ Allow the engine to cool.
▪ Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

▪ Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
▪ Do not touch any hot engine parts – there is a risk of burns.
▪ Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may still turn suddenly about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
▪ Do not smoke in the vicinity of the engine and avoid the use of open flames or sparks.
▪ Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. There is a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
▪ Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

▪ If it is necessary to work on the engine with the engine running, beware of **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - they can be fatal!
▪ Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
▪ Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Only refill using fluids with the proper specification - risk of damage to the vehicle!

Note

▪ Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
▪ We recommend you have the operating fluids replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

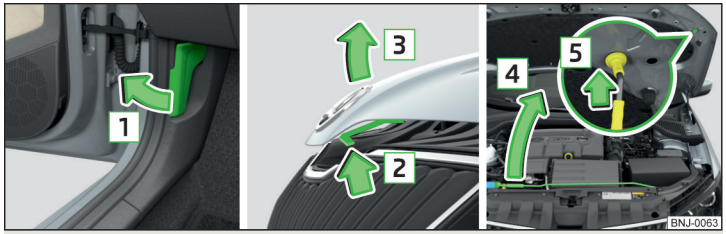


Fig. 167 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

Open flap

› Ensure that the windscreen wipers are not raised away from the windscreen - risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 167.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Drop down the bonnet lid from a height of about 20 cm applying light pressure until it clicks safely into place.

! WARNING

- Never drive with the bonnet lid not properly closed - risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

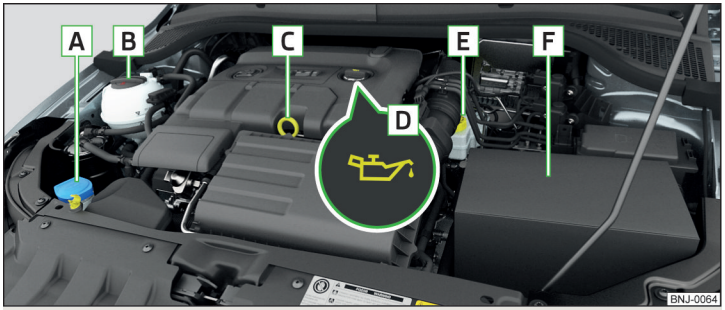


Fig. 168 **Arrangement (example) in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

A	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	139
B	Coolant expansion reservoir	141
C	Engine oil dipstick	140
D	Engine oil filler opening	140
E	Brake fluid reservoir	142
F	Vehicle battery	142

Windscreen washer fluid

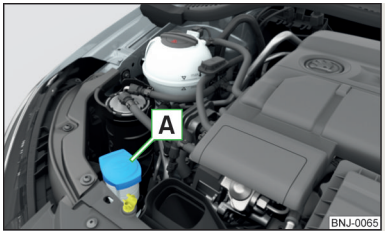


Fig. 169
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 169.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid for the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use windscreen washer fluid from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid - otherwise the liquid transportation system might be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification ____ 139
Check and refill ____ 140

The engine has been filled ex-factory with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year (except in extreme climate zones).

We recommend that the oil changes be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The engine oil should be changed at specified service intervals » page 129.

The engine uses up some oil, depending on driving style and operating conditions (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

! WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 137.

! CAUTION

Do not add any additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

i Note

We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI - EU6	VW 504 00
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.4 l/55, 66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

[1] In some countries, 5.4 ltr. applies for both variants.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI - EU6	VW 502 00
1.0 l/55 kW MPI - EU4	
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	
1.6 l/66, 81 kW MPI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.4 l/55, 66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If no prescribed engine oil is available, then **max. 0.5 l** oil of the following specifications can be refilled.
  - Petrol engines: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Check and refill

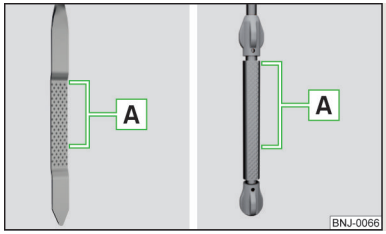


Fig. 170
Dipstick variants

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

Check and refill oil under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the status

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.
› Pull the dipstick out and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick back to the stop and then pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in.

The oil level must lie in range A» Fig. 170. If the oil level is below range A, oil must be added.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening D» Fig. 168 *on page 138*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in portions of 0.5 litres» page 139.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be below range A » Fig. 170there is a risk of damage to the engine as well as to the exhaust system.
- If a top up with oil is not possible or the oil level is above range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

An engine oil level which is too low is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message.» page 34 Nevertheless, we recommend checking the oil level on a regular basis using the dipstick.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking and refilling ____ 141

The coolant helps to keep the engine temperature down, and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevent furring).

The proportion of coolant additive in the coolant must be 40 to 60 %.

The correct mix of water and coolant additive should be checked and if necessary corrected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 137.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised - risk of scalding or injury from splashes of coolant!
- To protect against the coolant splashing, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If the coolant comes into contact with the eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water for several minutes, and where appropriate seek medical help.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator and install any parts (e.g auxiliary lights.) in front of the air intakes - risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

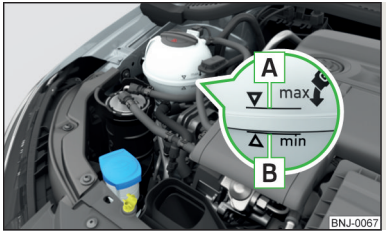


Fig. 171
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Check and refill coolant under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm the result of the check may be wrong).

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - The coolant level must lie between the marks A and B » Fig. 171. If the coolant level is below the mark B, top up with coolant.

Refilling

The reservoir must always contain a small amount of coolant ».

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.

› Always top up using coolant of the correct specification.

› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** for the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 171.

If the specified coolant is not available, then refilling only with distilled or demineralised water, and get a specialist garage to correct the water-coolant additive mix as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- With an empty expansion tank top up coolant. The system could aerate - risk of engine damage! Stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 171. The coolant could, when heated, be expelled from the cooling system - risk of damage to the engine parts.
- If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
- If non-distilled (non-demineralised) water has been used to top up, the coolant should be replaced by a specialist garage - risk of engine damage.
- A loss of coolant indicates **leaks** in the cooling system - risk of engine damage. Top up with coolant and then seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and shown by the relevant message » page 34. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid



Fig. 172
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - The brake fluid level must lie between the markings "MIN" and "MAX"» Fig. 172.

Specification - The brake fluid must comply with the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 137.
- If the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" » Fig. 172mark, this may be an indication of a leak in the brake system. Stop driving - There is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- A low brake fluid level which is too low is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message» page 29. We still recommend inspecting the brake fluid level in the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Check condition 143
Charging 144
Disconnect/reconnect and change 144

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection
The on-board power supply system tries to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging in the following ways when it is subject to heavy loading.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- Through the power limitation of certain loads.
- By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - it can cause injury, chemical burns or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.

WARNING (Continued)

- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Get medical assistance without delay.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent (e.g. children).
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

Working on the car battery may cause explosion, fire, injury or chemical burn! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not smoke, use open flames or light or transmitting devices.
- **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Do not connect the battery terminals, bridging the two poles will cause a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

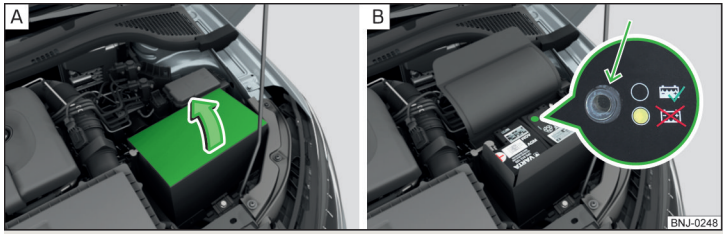


Fig. 173 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover / acid level indicator**

Read and observe and on page 142 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level

For car batteries with acid level indicator, acidity can be checked on the basis of a colour display. In vehicle batteries with the label **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow» Fig. 173 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock on the display» Fig. 173 - B.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge

If frequent short journeys are made, the vehicle battery does not recharge sufficiently.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, then disconnect the negative terminal⊖ of the battery or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

Only charge the battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging

› For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system or auxiliary heater ⊕, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger on the battery's ⊕ pole, ⊖ the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the ground point of the engine » page 157.
› For vehicles **without** the START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the charger terminals to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕, ⊖ to ⊖).
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
› Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING

▪ When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused through sparking while unclamping or loosening the cable plug.
▪ So-called "quick-charging" of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have "Quick loading" carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnect/reconnect and change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original battery.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

› To **disconnect**, switch off the ignition and disconnect the negative terminal first ⊖, then disconnect the positive terminal ⊕.
› When **reconnecting** the battery, reconnect the positive terminal first ⊕, then connect the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 52
Time settings	» page 37

! CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the battery only with the ignition and consumers turned off - risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Before disconnecting the battery, always close all electric windows otherwise malfunctions of the window can occur.
▪ Under no circumstances mix up the charging cables – risk of fire.

i Note

After disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of the vehicle is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Advice on tyre/wheel usage 145
Tyre pressure 146
Tyre wear and wheel change 146
Spare wheel 147
Spare wheel 147
Tyre marking 147

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

During the first 500 km, **new tyres** do not offer optimum grip; appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Tyres with the deeper profiles should always be fitted to the front wheels.

Rims and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheels and tyres should always be **stored** in a cool, dry and dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored vertically.

Tyre life
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. We recommend that you do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). For example, **DOT ... 10 16...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10. week of 2016.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre's profile immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and help should be sought from a specialist garage.

Fitting new tyres
Only fit approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about their condition and age - risk of accidents.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – there is the risk of an accident.

CAUTION
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances (e.g. oil, grease and fuel) which could damage them. If the tyres with these substances come into contact, then we recommend that you check this in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surfaces in winter conditions - there is a risk of rim damage (e.g through salt spreading).

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use tyres, snow chains and full wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre pressure

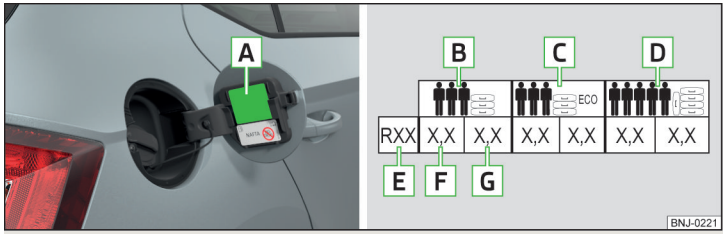


Fig. 174 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A» Fig. 174 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

- B Inflation pressure for half load
- C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)
- D Inflation pressure for full load
- E Tyre diameter in inches
  This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document) and listed on the vehicle data » page 173.
- F Tyre pressure value on the front axle
- G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure (including that of the emergency or spare wheel) at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 117.

WARNING

- Do not drive with incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very rapid pressure loss (e.g. in the event of tyre damage) an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking - risk of accident.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner [1].

Tyre wear and wheel change

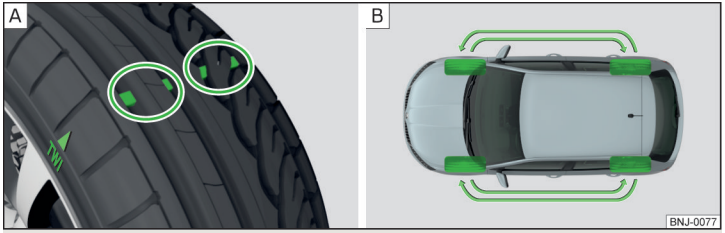


Fig. 175 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

Tyre wear increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressures.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / braking).
- Incorrect wheel balancing (you should have the wheels balanced after changing/repair tyres or if the steering "is drifting").
- Wheel alignment errors.

There are **wear indicator markers**in the tyre profiles, indicating whether the minimum permissible tread depth has been reached» Fig. 175 - A. A tyre should be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI" and/or other symbols (e.g. △), identify the position of the wear indicators.

To ensure uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km, in line with the schedule» Fig. 175 - B.

[1] Only valid for some countries and some models.

WARNING

- Change the tyres at the latest when they are worn down to the wear indicators - risk of accident.
- Faulty wheel alignment affects handling - risk of accident.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle"pulling" to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If there are no external signs of tyre damage, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 117.

WARNING

- If, you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be mounted with opposite direction of rotation, then drive carefully. In this situation the best properties of the tyre are no longer present.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.

Spare wheel

Only use this emergency spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is **not intended for permanent use**.

A warning label is always placed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- ▸ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▸ Be specially attentive when driving.
- ▸ Inflate the emergency spare to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 146.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 117.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Avoid full throttle acceleration, sharp braking and fast cornering when driving with the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 185/60 R 15 84 H

185	Tyre width in mm
60	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
84	load index
H	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in a given category

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Topspeed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or "winter") tyres

All-year or "winter"tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol ⛄) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

To get the best possible driving characteristics, all-year or "winter"tyres, with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels, should be fitted.

If "winter" tyres are mounted, summer tyres should be fitted again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
All-year or "winter"tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛄) of a lower speed category than listed in the vehicle's technical documentation can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed for these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

For vehicles with Infotainment System with the key**CAR** the speed limit for all-season or"winter"Tires can be set» *Owner's Manual infotainment*. For other vehicles, there is the option to set the speed limit for winter tyres at a specialist garage.

If the vehicle has all-season or "winter"tires of a lower speed category then the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory, a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the mounted tyres must be fixed in the interior of the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver's field of vision. The warning label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category supplied for the mounted tyres in Infotainment[1]. This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or "winter"tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve handling in wintry road conditions.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 152.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	175/70 R14

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15	38 mm	185/60 R15

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

WARNING
Do not use chains on snow and ice-free routes - the handling would be impaired and there is a risk of damage to the tyres.

[1] Valid in certain countries.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle ____ 149
Location of reflective vest ____ 149
Fire extinguisher ____ 150
Vehicle tool kit ____ 150

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

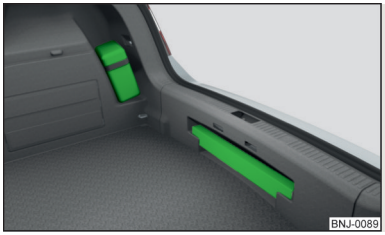


Fig. 176
Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle - version 1

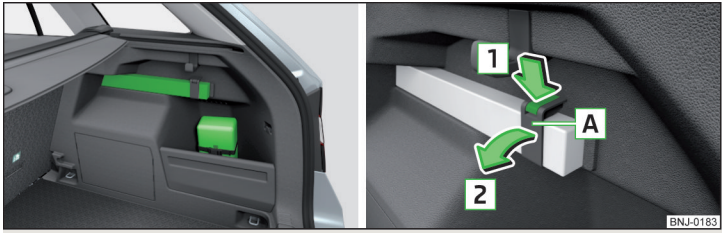


Fig. 177 **Placing the first aid kit and the warning triangle - variant 2 / release the warning triangle**

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 176 or » Fig. 177.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be stored in the recess under the loading edge » Fig. 176.

Warning triangle – version 2
The first-aid box can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap» Fig. 177.

› To **release**, press the clasp on the tape in the direction of arrow 1 fold open the belt A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 177.
› To **secure**, fold up the belt A against the arrow direction 2 until it locks into place.

! WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle, or there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Location of reflective vest

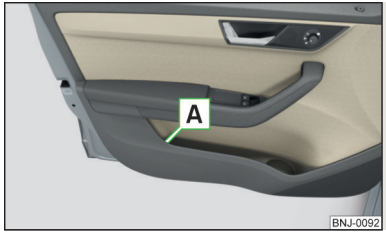


Fig. 178
Stowage compartment for the reflective vest in the front door

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment A inside the storage compartment of the front door » Fig. 178.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 179
Release the fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow» Fig. 179and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher, there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

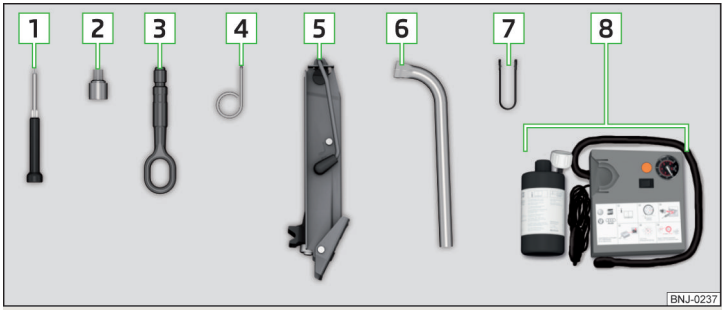


Fig. 180 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box with the tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel and may be secured with tape, depending on specification.

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

1 Screwdriver
2 Top section for the anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
5 Jack with sign
6 Wheel brace
7 Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
8 Breakdown kit

WARNING

▪ The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with it – there is a risk of injury.
▪ Always stow the tool safely in the box and make sure that it is attached with the belt to the spare wheel - otherwise it could cause injury to the occupants if breaking suddenly or colliding with another vehicle.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box - risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** select**1, gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road while the wheel is being changed (they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
- Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

- Take out the emergency or spare wheel » page 152.
- Remove the full wheel trim» page 152or caps» page 152.
- Loosen the wheel bolts » page 153 ».
- Jack up the vehicle» page 153 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench ("pulling crossways")» page 153.
- Replace the wheel trim» page 152and caps» page 152.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 145.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If screws are corroded and difficult to move, these must be replaced.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn), provided the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come loose and fall off – risk of injury.
- Under no circumstances must the bolts be greased or oiled - cause an accident.

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

- Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure it with a nut.
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
- Check tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary and, with vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 117.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

WARNING

Tightening torque which is too high can damage the threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Where tightening torque is too low, the wheels may become loose while driving - risk of accident. Therefore drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the emergency or spare wheel



Fig. 181
Taking the wheel out

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a screw.

Taking the wheel out

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the nut in the direction of arrow» Fig. 181and take out the wheel.

Stowing the wheel

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw the nut in the opposite direction to the arrow until it stops » Fig. 181.
› Place the box with the tool kit back inside the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Remove trim

› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims on the edge of the full wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference latches correctly into position.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is indicated by means of a symbol on the back of the wheel trim supplied ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories. If using the anti-theft wheel bolt it should be fitted at this point » !.

WARNING

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system, or the is a risk of an accident.

CAUTION

- If the wheel trim is positioned outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
- Only use manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 182
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap** insert the extraction pliers as far as they will go on the cap and pulling them out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 182.
› To **install**, insert the cap onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

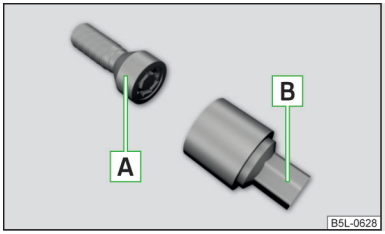


Fig. 183
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect wheels from being stolen. This can only be B,with the attachment» Fig. 183 **loosened / tightened**.

› Insert the attachment B » Fig. 183as far as it will go on the anti-theft wheel bolt A.
› Insert the key as far as it will go onto attachment B and loosen / tighten the wheel bolt.
› Remove the attachment.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change.

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim» page 152.

Note

The attachment and the anti-theft wheel bolts are provided with a code number. A replacement attachment can be ordered from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories using this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 184
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Insert the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 183 *on page 153*.
› To **loosen the screws**,grasp the key end and turn the screw about **one** turn rotation in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 184.
› To**tighten the screws**grasp the key end and turn the screw about against the direction of the arrow» Fig. 184until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - danger of injury.

Raising the vehicle

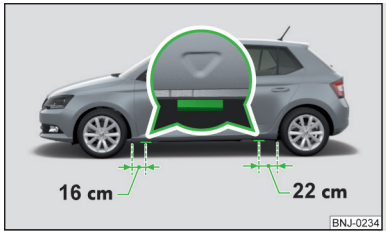


Fig. 185
Jacking points for the jack

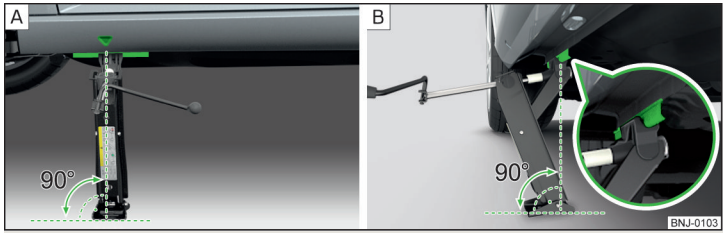


Fig. 186 **Attach lifting jack**

The procedure for lifting the vehicle is valid for all body versions.

Before the vehicle is raised, please take note of the safety instructions » !.

To lift the vehicle, us the jack from the tool kit. Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The jacking points are located on the lower sill » Fig. 185.

› Position the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack will fit in the jacking point when raised» Fig. 186 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its pawl covers the jacking point» Fig. 186- B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

! WARNING

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Ensure the vehicle cannot unexpectedly roll away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Place a wide and stable base material under the jack if on a loose surfaces (e.g. gravel).
  - Place an anti-slip base material (e.g. a rubber mat) under the jack if on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts (e.g. arms or legs) under the vehicle while the vehicle is raised.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

! CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly positioned against the bar of the lower beam - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description of the breakdown kit 155
Preparing to use the breakdown kit 155
Sealing and inflating tyres 155
Information on driving with repaired tyres 156

The following information applies for the breakdown kit supplied ex-factory.

The breakdown kit can be used to seal punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit **is never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit as soon as possible, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails).

Do not use the breakdown kit in the following cases.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
- Tyre punctures greater than 4 mm.
- Damage to the tyre wall.
- The use-by date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING
- If there is skin contact with the sealant wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

Description of the breakdown kit

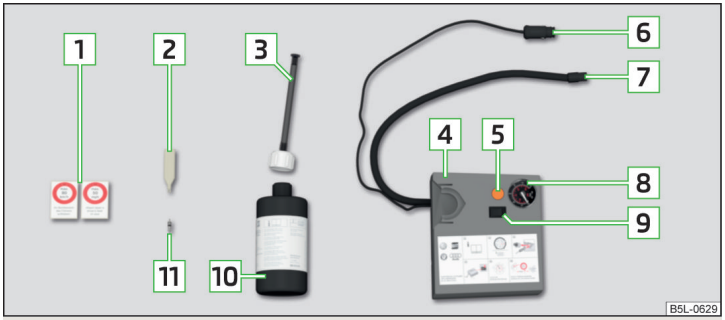


Fig. 187 **Description of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1 Sticker with "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph" speed designation
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5 Button for tyre pressure reduction
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealant
11 Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before undertaking a wheel repair on a road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. While the repair is being carried out, the passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 187 *on page 155*on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean base (rag, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 » Fig. 187 *on page 155*several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the bottle cap is pierced.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and insert the bottle onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert with the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 187 *on page 155*firmly onto the tyre valve.

› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 70.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has been reached, turn off the air compressor. Maximum run time of 6 minutes » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 » Fig. 187 *on page 155* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

At a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar, the journey can be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h or 50 mph.

! WARNING

- If the tire does not inflate at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Stop driving! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot while the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor if it has been running for as much as 6 minutes – risk of damage to the compressor! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information on driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 154 first.

The filling pressure of the repaired tyre is a 10-minute test drive.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› You cannot properly seal the tyre using the breakdown kit. STOP **Do not continue to drive!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 146.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle ____ 157

! WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 137.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 142.
- A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion and injury!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

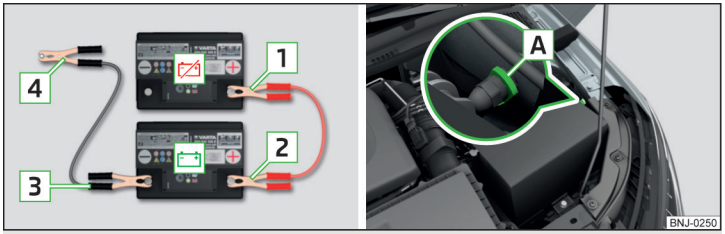


Fig. 188 **Jump-starting: ⊟ - Discharged battery, ⊟ - power-supplying battery / ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 156 first.

If, because of a discharged battery, it is not possible to start the engine, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. To do this, jump-start cables are required which have a sufficiently large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the power-supplying battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the power-supplying battery.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the power-supplying battery.
- For vehicles **with** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A» Fig. 188.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or directly to the engine block.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Initiate the starting process in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
- Detach the jumper cables in the exact **reverse** order that they were attached.

! WARNING

- Never clamp the jump cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - risk of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit.
- Position the jump cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

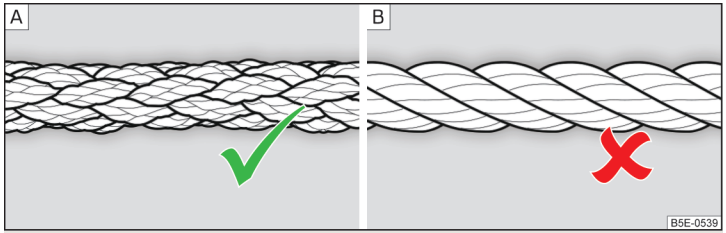


Fig. 189 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

To tow with a tow rope, only use a braided synthetic fibre rope» Fig. 189 - A» !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the**towing eyes at the front** » page 158,**towing eyes at the rear**» page 159or to the**towing device of the trailer device** » page 119.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**

✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle
› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle
› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. The brake booster and power steering only operate if the engine is running, otherwise much greater force has to be applied to the brake pedal and more power has to be expended for steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Keep the tow rope taut at all times during the towing procedure.

WARNING
▪ Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 189- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - There is a risk of an accident.
▪ The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION
▪ Do not tow-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 156, *Jump-starting*.
▪ For off-road towing manoeuvres, there is a risk to both vehicles that the fasteners may become overloaded and damaged.

Note
We recommend that you use a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye



Fig. 190 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting
› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 190.
› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye
› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 190 until it clicks into place».

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

WARNING
The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Towing eye rear



Fig. 191
Rear towing eye

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right » Fig. 191.

Vehicles with a trailer device
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable tow-bar may be used» page 119, *Hitch*.

Remote control - change battery



Fig. 192 **Remove cover/take out battery**

› Pop out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 192with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 48.

CAUTION
- The replacement battery must correspond to the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

Note
- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Emergency unlocking / locking of doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 159
Locking the door without locking cylinders 160
Unlock the boot lid 160
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 160

Unlocking/locking the driver's door



Fig. 193 **Handle on the driver's door: opening lock cover / lock cylinder with key**

The driver's door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 193.
› Release the door handle.

› For vehicles with**LHD**,insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 193into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing downwards** into the lock and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders



Fig. 194 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

› Open the corresponding back door remove the trim A » Fig. 194.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

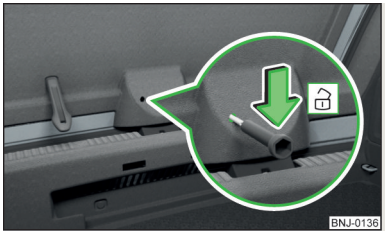


Fig. 195
Unlocking the door

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside the vehicle.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim» Fig. 195 as far as the latch.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

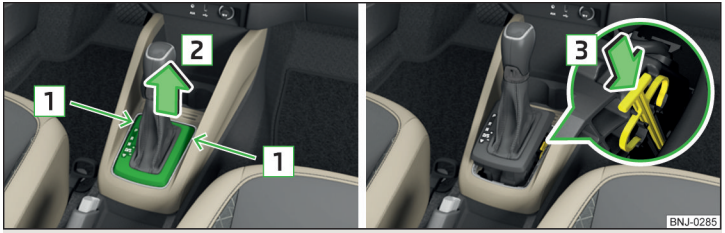


Fig. 196 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or similar tool into the gap in the arrow area 1 » Fig. 196and carefully lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Likewise lift the cover with your hand as well.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 3, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 161
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 162

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 197
Setting the service position for the wiper arms



Fig. 198 **Changing the front windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blades, close the bonnet and put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the lever in the direction of arrow» Fig. 197within 10 seconds and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 198.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 197.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 199 **Changing the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm» page 162from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 199.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

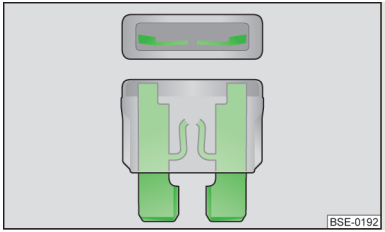


Fig. 200
Blown fuse

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel 163
Fuse arrangement in the dash panel 163
Fuses in the engine compartment 164
Fuse arrangement in the engine compartment 165

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable from the melted-through metal strip » Fig. 200.

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 137.

! CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse again blows after a short time, then seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- "Do not repair" the fuses and do not replace them with stronger fuses - danger of fire and damage to another electrical system.

i Note

- We recommend that you always carry replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- One fuse may cover several consumers. A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dash panel

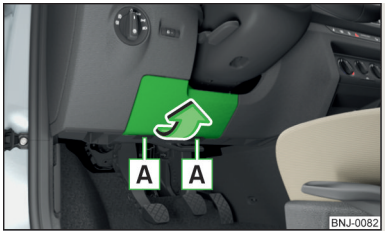


Fig. 201
Remove the cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 201 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.
› Push the lower edge of the cover in the region A.

Fuse arrangement in the dash panel

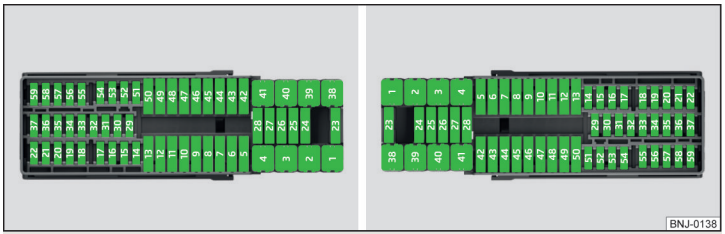


Fig. 202 **Fuses: LHD / RHD**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Left parking light, parking light, high-mounted brake light
2	Central locking, front and rear window washer system (only with KESSY or ACC)
3	Ignition
4	Right-hand light, rear fog light, license plate light
5	Power windows - driver
6	Interior lighting
7	Horn
8	Towing hitch - left light
9	Operating lever beneath the steering wheel, engine control unit (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), selector lever of the automatic transmission (only without KESSY), ESC (only without KESSY), towing equipment (only without KESSY), power steering (only without KESSY)
10	Power windows - rear left
11	Headlight cleaning system
12	Infotainment display
13	12 volt socket in luggage compartment
14	Operating lever under the steering wheel, light switch, ignition key removal lock (automatic transmission), diagnostic connector, headlight flasher, SmartGate, rain sensor, light sensor, reversing camera
15	Air conditioning, automatic transmission
16	Instrument cluster
17	Anti-theft alarm, horn
18	Not assigned
19	Not assigned
20	Not assigned
21	Not assigned
22	Front and rear window washer system (only without KESSY or without ACC)
23	Not assigned

No.	Power consumer
24	Blower fan for the air conditioning system, heating, air conditioning, heating
25	Not assigned
26	Heated front seats
27	Rear window wiper
28	Not assigned
29	airbag
30	Electric windows, light switches, reversing light switch, exterior mirrors, feed for the central toolbar, feed for the side toolbar, rear view mirror, air-conditioning system, park assist
31	Fuel pump, radiator fan, cruise control, front and rear window washer, engine start
32	Diagnostic connector, headlight range adjustment
33	Clutch pedal switch
34	Heated windscreen washer jets
35	Not assigned
36	Heated front seats
37	Radar
38	Not assigned
39	Electrical auxiliary heating system
40	Not assigned
41	Rear window heating
42	Power windows - front passenger
43	Trailer device - electrical outlet
44	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt power socket
45	Power windows - rear right
46	Front and rear window washer, operating lever under the steering wheel
47	Trailer device - electrical outlet
48	Towing hitch - right light
49	Fuel pump
50	Infotainment
51	Heating of the external mirror

No.	Power consumer
52	KESSY
53	KESSY steering lock
54	Not assigned
55	Heated front seats
56	Not assigned
57	Not assigned
58	Not assigned
59	Not assigned

Fuses in the engine compartment

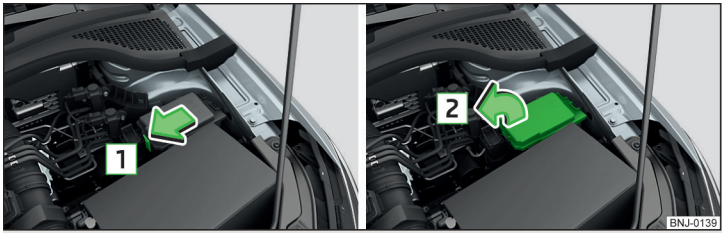


Fig. 203 **Remove the cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Press together the lock buttons of the cover simultaneously in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 203.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder on the cover of the fuse box in the dash panel.
› Replace the defective fuse.
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.

! CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse arrangement in the engine compartment

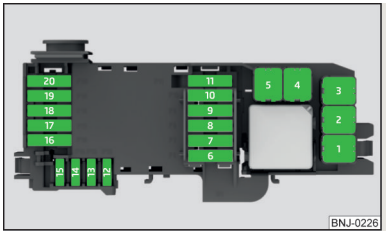


Fig. 204
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Glow plug system
3	ABS or ESC
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system
5	Electrical auxiliary heating system
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control system
8	Windscreen wipers
9	Battery data module
10	ABS or ESC
11	Not assigned
12	Injectors, valve for fuel metering, control valve for oil pressure, valve for exhaust gas recirculation cooler
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Fuel pump, coolant pump
15	Engine control system
16	Starter
17	Engine control system
18	Additional electrical heating, radiator fan, wastegate, oil temperature sensor, valve for activated charcoal filter, valve for intake manifold
19	Lambda probe
20	Preheating unit, crankcase ventilation heating, ignition coils

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights 166
Cover the front wheel Removing / replacing 166
Remove/replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle 167
Changing bulbs for low and main beam (Halogen headlights) 167
Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights) 168
Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights) 168
Replacing the bulb for the daytime running lights light (Halogen headlights) 168
Replacing the bulb for the low beam (Halogen headlights) 169
Replacing the bulb for the main beam (Halogen headlights) 169
Replacing the bulb for the turn signal light (Halogen headlights) 170
Changing light bulbs for fog lights 170
Changing the bulb for the licence plate light 171
Removing/installing tail light 171
Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly 172

We recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

Visit a specialist garage if an LED diode is faulty.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 137.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H8, H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other light bulbs should be changed by your specialist garage.
- We recommend that you always carry a box of replacement bulbs in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights

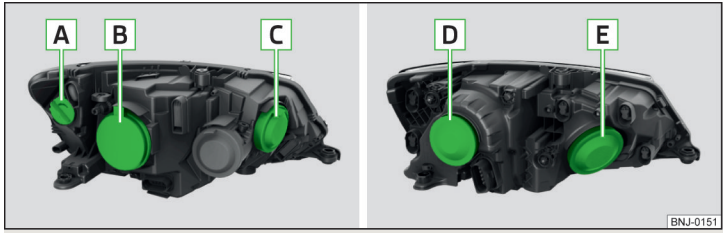


Fig. 205 **Halogen headlights/halogen projector headlights**

Read and observe and on page 166 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen bulbs.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 205

- A Dayl. dri. light
- B Low beam, high beam and parking light
- C Flashing
- D Low beam
- E High beam and turning signal switch

Cover the front wheel Removing / replacing

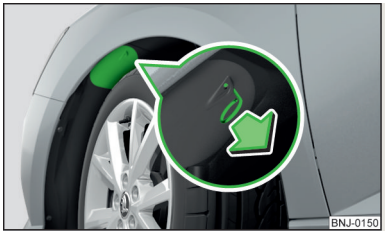


Fig. 206
Remove plastic cover

Read and observe and on page 166 first.

The cover in the front wheel well must be removed in order to change certain light bulbs.

Details about removing the cover if needed, are given in the description of each lamp change.

Removal

› Adjust front wheels in the direction of centre of the vehicle.
› Insert the clamp for removing the full wheel covers» page 150, *Vehicle tool kit*into the recess in the cover.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow » Fig. 206.

Inserting

› Insert and push the cover into the corresponding opening.

The cover must engage securely.

Remove/replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle

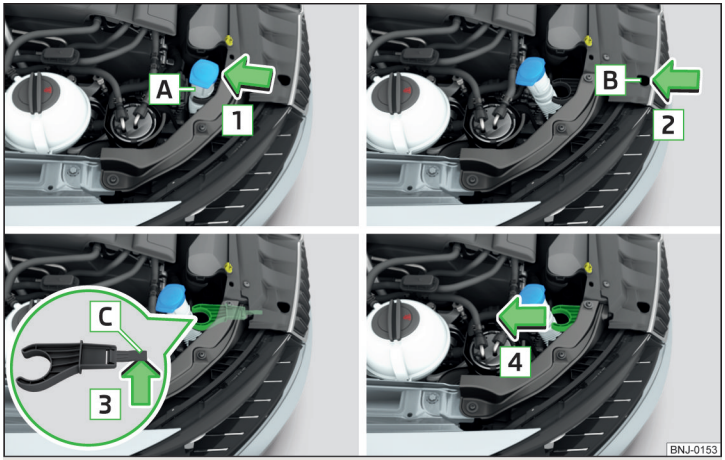


Fig. 207 **Remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

The mounting for the mopping water container nozzle must be removed in order to replace some light bulbs. The holder is located in the engine compartment, front right.

Details about removing the mounting, if needed,are given in each lamp replacement description.

Removal

› Remove the container nozzle A from the holder in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 207.
› Insert a finger into the recess B in the direction of arrow 2 and lift the catch C in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the holder of the container nozzle in the direction of arrow 4.

Inserting

› Slide the holder of the container nozzle in the opposite direction to the arrow 4 » Fig. 207.

The holder must engage firmly.

› Push the container nozzle into the holder in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.

Changing bulbs for low and main beam (Halogen headlights)

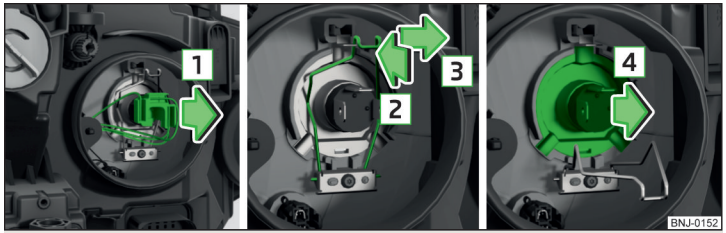


Fig. 208 **Removing bulbs for low and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

To replace lamp, first remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle in the right headlight » page 167.

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Press the connector latch and remove the plug connector by jiggling in the direction of arrow 1» Fig. 208.
› Push in the spring in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Release the spring in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the defective bulb in the direction of arrow 4.
› Fit a new bulb into the headlamp and secure the spring in the opposite direction to the arrow 3.
› Insert the plug in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle » page 167.

› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights)



Fig. 209
Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 167.

› Remove the protective cap C » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 209.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap C » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights)

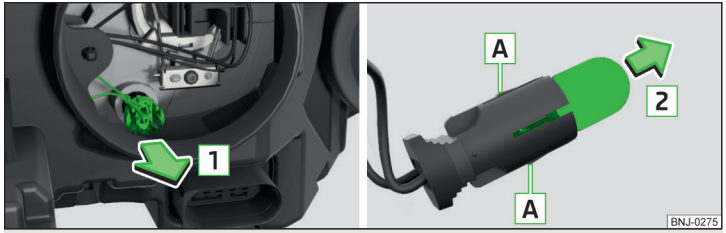


Fig. 210 **Change the light bulb for the parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

Remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 167.

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 210.
› Grasp the pedestal with the light bulb in the area A.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle» page 167.

› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

Replacing the bulb for the daytime running lights light (Halogen headlights)

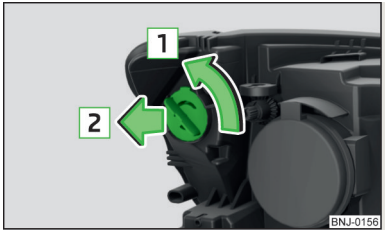


Fig. 211
Changing the bulb for the daytime running light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel well» page 166.
› Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 211.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

Replacing the bulb for the low beam (Halogen headlights)

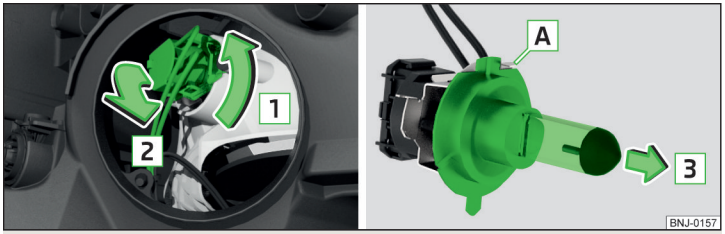


Fig. 212 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel well» page 166.
› Remove the protective cap D » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 212.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug A on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap D » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel well» page 166.

Replacing the bulb for the main beam (Halogen headlights)



Fig. 213 **Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 167.

› Remove the protective cap E » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 213.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug A on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap E » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace mounting for the mopping water container nozzle » page 167.

Replacing the bulb for the turn signal light (Halogen headlights)

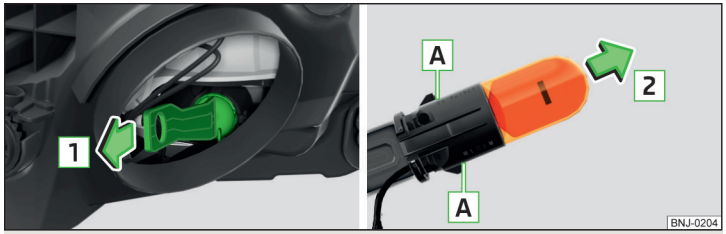


Fig. 214 **Changing the bulb for the turn signal light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

To replace lamp, first remove mounting for the mopping water container nozzle in the right headlight » page 167.

› Remove the protective cap E » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 214.
› Grasp the pedestal with the light bulb in the area A.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap E » Fig. 205 *on page 166*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle » page 167.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

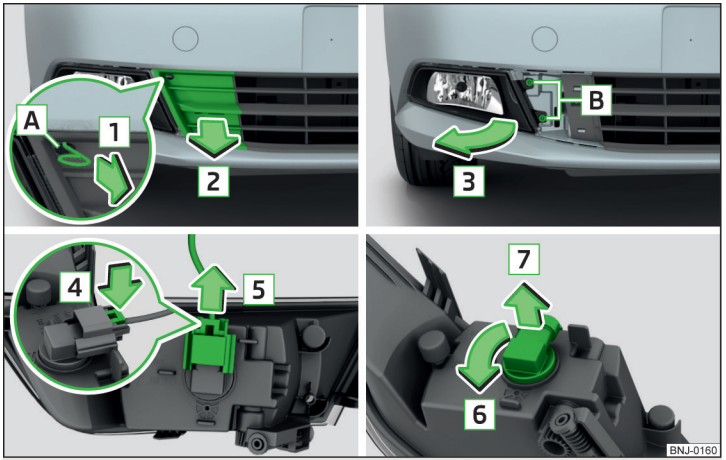


Fig. 215 **Removing the fog lights/ changing bulb for fog lights**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel covers into opening A » page 150, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1 remove the protective grille in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 215.
› Unscrew the screws B using the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 215.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 215 and tightening.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Changing the bulb for the licence plate light

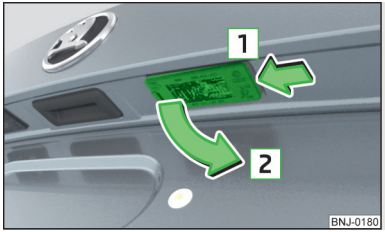


Fig. 216
Remove licence plate light

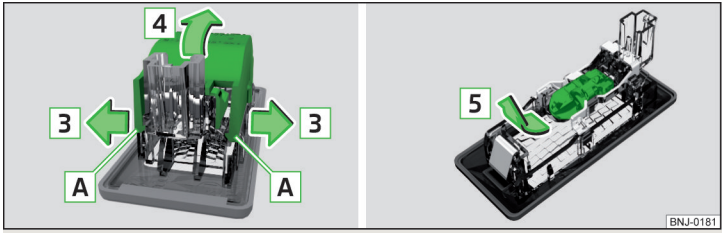


Fig. 217 **Remove the cover cap / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

› Push in the light in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 216until it is detached.
› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the cap of the lamp in range A and in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 217.
› Remove the cap of the light in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Clip in the cap of the lamp counter to the direction of arrow 4.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Removing/installing tail light

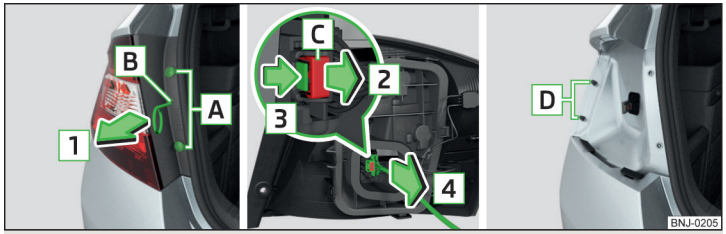


Fig. 218 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Removing

› Open the tailgate.
› Unscrew the screws A with the screwdriver from the tool kit .
› Into the opening B insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims, directed with the eyelet downward (in the right light with the eyelet upward).
› Grasp the light with the palm of the hand and remove carefully in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 218 from the pin D.
› Press the latch C on the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the latch in the direction of arrow 3 and pull out the holder in the direction of arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder into the lamp.
› Tighten the lock in the opposite direction to the arrow 2 » Fig. 218.
› Insert the lamp with the holes B » Fig. 219 *on page 172* onto the pins D » Fig. 218 in the body.
› Carefully press the light into the pins on the bodywork » !.
› Screw the light into place.
› Shut the boot lid.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become stuck between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – or there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the wiring harness has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly

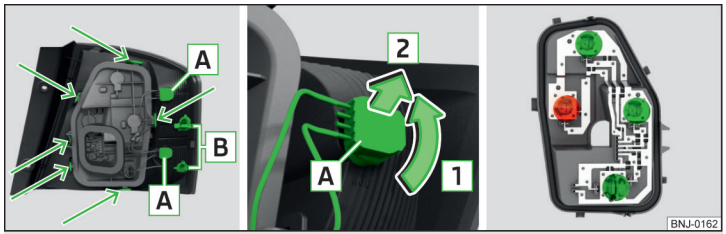


Fig. 219 **Outer part of the lamp / removing the bulb / lamp holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 166 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 219.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Jiggle the bulb to remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Inner part of the light

› Turn the holders with the bulbs A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 219.
› Remove the holders with the bulbs from the lamp housing in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unlock the bulb holder using the marked area with arrows» Fig. 219and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage firmly.

› Reinsert the holders with the bulbs A into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 up to the latch.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle data ____ 173
Operating weight ____ 174
Payload ____ 175
measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives ____ 175
Dimensions ____ 176
Departure angle ____ 177

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The listed values are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle data

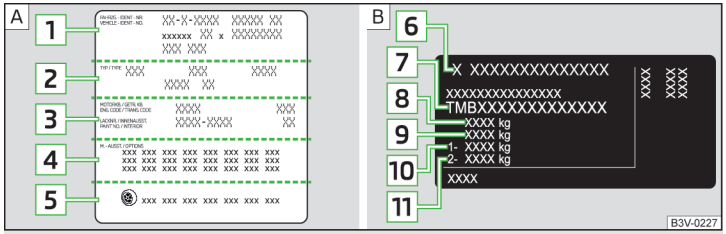


Fig. 220 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker» Fig. 220 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck into the Owner's Manual.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code / paint number / interior equipment / engine output / engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 220 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Vehicle manufacturers
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), together with a nameplate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum permissible trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of an accident and damage.

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without any equipment added that would also increase the weight (e.g. air conditioning, emergency or spare wheel etc.). It also includes a weight allowance for the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight - Fabia

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/44 kW MPI	MG	1055
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG (EU6)	1055
	MG (EU4)	1050
1.2 l./66 kW TSI	MG	1109
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1129
	DSG	1154
1.6 l./66 kW MPI	MG	1086
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	AG	1126
1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR	MG	1156
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1156
	DSG	1186
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR	MG	1165

Operating weight - Fabia Combi

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG (EU6)	1079
	MG (EU4)	1074
1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI	MG	1133
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1153
	DSG	1178
1.6 l./66 kW MPI	MG	1110
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	AG	1150
1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR	MG	1180
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1180
	DSG	1210
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR	MG	1189

i Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Urban driving is then simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The emission and fuel consumption figures given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by statutory or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

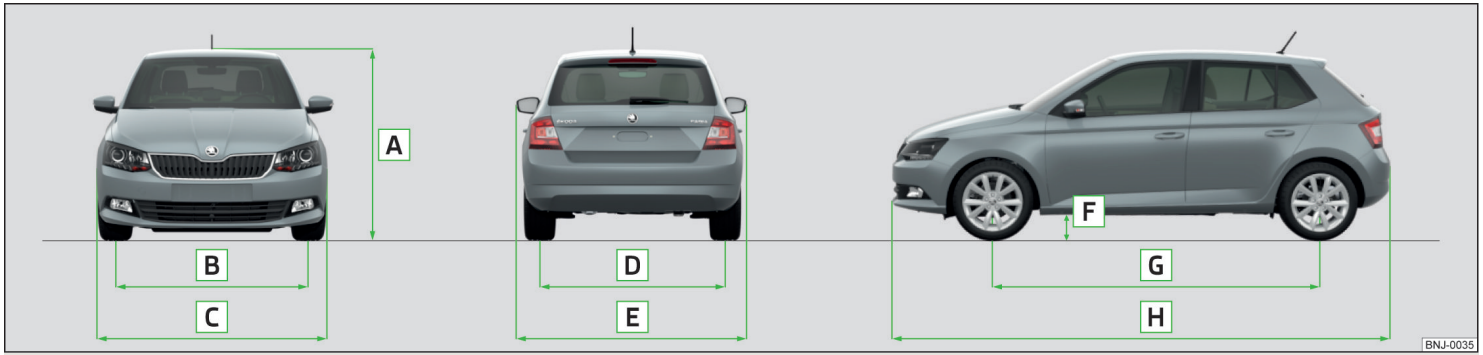


Fig. 221 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions by operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 221	Specification		Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	Height		1467	1467
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1463	1463
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1457	1457
C	Width		1732	1732
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1457	1457
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1451	1451
E	Width including exterior mirrors		1958	1958
F	Clearance		133	135
G	Wheelbase		2470	2470
H	Length		3992	4257

Departure angle



Fig. 222
Overhang angle

Angle » Fig. 222

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

The overhang angle values indicate the maximum incline of a slope, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody making contact with the slope. The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

» Fig. 222	Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	14.6	14.6
B	17.6	13.1

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.0 l/44 kW MPI engine 178
1.0 l/55 kW MPI engine 178
1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI engine 179
1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine 179
1.6 l/66 kW MPI engine 179
1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine 180
1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR engine 180
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine 180
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR engine 181

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emission standard is listed in the vehicle technical documentation and the declaration of conformity (the COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner [a].

[a] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.0 l/44 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	44 / 5000-6000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	95 / 3000-4300
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Body	**Fabia**
Gearbox	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	15.7

1.0 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	55/6200	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	95 / 3000-4300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	172	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.7	14.9

1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	66 / 4400-5400	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	160 / 1400-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	182	185
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81 / 4600-5600			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	175 / 1400-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197			
Body	**Fabia**		**Fabia Combi**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	196	196	199	199
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.4	9.4	9.6	9.6

1.6 l/66 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	66 / 4250-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155 / 3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	181	184
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.0	11.1

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5800	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155 / 3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**AG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h)	190	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.0	11.1

1.4 l/55 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	55 / 3000-3750	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	210 / 1500-2000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/1422	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	172	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	13.1	13.3

1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	66 / 3000-3250			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	230 / 1750-2500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/1422			
Body	**Fabia**		**Fabia Combi**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	182	182	184	184
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.1	11.1	11.3	11.3

1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	77 / 3500-3750	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250 / 1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/1422	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Gearbox	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	193	196
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.1	10.2

Index

A

ABS
Operation 101
Warning light 31
ACC 110
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 129
Accessories 127
Adaptive cruise control
automatic stop-start 111
Operation 110
Set/change the desired speed 112
special driving conditions 113
Start control 112
Stop/resume control 112
Warning light 30, 36
Adaptive Cruise Control 110
Malfunctions 114
Operation overview 111
Overtaking 114
Radar sensor 100
Set the clearance level 113
Trailer towing 114
Adjusting
Steering wheel 11
Adjusting the seats 10
Advance warning / Emergency braking 36
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 145
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 88
air bag 16
airbag
warning light 31
Airbag
Adjustments and impairments to the airbag system 128
Deactivation 18
Deployment 17
Airbag system 16
Air conditioning 85
Climatronic 87
Manual air conditioning 86
Recirculated air mode 88
Air outlet vents 88
Alarm 49
Trailer 126
All-year tyres 148
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 101
Anti-theft alarm system 49
Trailer 126
Anti-theft wheel bolts 153
Armrest
Front 63
Ashtray 69
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 120
bar ball, Step 2 121
Assist systems 100
Auto Check Control 37
Automatic drive
Selector lever 96
Automatic driving light control 55
automatic gearbox
Tiptronic 97
Automatic gearbox
Kickdown 98
Malfunction 33
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 160
Selector lever lock 97
Starting-off and driving 98
Warning light 33
Automatic shutdown of consumers 142
Automatic transmission 96
Selector lever lock 97
AUX 67
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 99

B

ball bar
ready position 120
Ball head
Check fitting 121
Ready position 120
Battery
Change in key 159
Belts 13
Belt tensioners 15
bike carriers 82
Bluetooth
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Bonnet
Closing 138
Opening 138
Boot
Cargo element 80
Class N1 vehicles 80
Hooks 77
see boot lid 50
Boot lid
Automatic locking 50
Open/Close 50
Brake Assist (HBA) 102
Brake booster 93
Brake fluid 142
Check 142
specification 142
Brake pads
new 93
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
Warning light 33
Brakes
Brake booster 93
Brake fluid 142
Braking and stabilisation systems 101
Handbrake 94

Information on braking 93
Warning lights 29
Brake system 101
Braking
Running in 98
Breakdown kit 154
Breakdown service
see Help in an emergency 8
Bulbs
Replacing 165
Button in driver's door
electric windows 51

C

Camera
See reversing camera 105
CAR
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Car battery
Check condition 143
Cover 143
Disconnecting and reconnecting 144
Replacing 144
Winter operation 143
CAR button
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Car care 131
Exterior 132
Interior 134
Outside 133
Car computer
see multifunction display 38
Care and maintenance 127
Cargo element 80
Carrier 84
Car wash 131
Car washing 131
Exterior 132
Interior 134
washing 131
Central locking 44
Problems 48
Central locking button 46
Change
battery 159
Changing
Windscreen wiper blades 162
Changing a wheel 151
Changing 151
Changing gear
Selector lever 96
Changing wheels
Wheels 151
Charging a vehicle battery 144
Check
Brake fluid 142
Engine oil 140
Fit ball head properly 121
Oil level 140
Checking
Battery status 143
Coolant 141
Checks
Statutory checks 127
Children and safety 20
Child safety lock 48
Child seat 20
Classification 22
Installation location 22, 23
in the passenger seat 22
ISOFIX 23
on the front passenger seat 21
on the passenger seat 21
TOP TETHER 24
Cigarette lighter 69
Cleaning the vehicle
Outside 133
Windows 133
Climatronic 85
Automatic operation 87
Operating elements 87
Recirculated air mode 88
Clothes hook 72
cockpit 26
Cockpit
Lighting 57
Coin and card holders 67
Comfort signalling 54
COMING HOME 56
Compartments 66
Component protection 128
Computer
see multifunction display 38
Coolant 140
Checking 141
Refilling 141
Temperature display 28
Warning light 34
CORNER
See Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
Correct routing of seat belt 14
Correct seated position 10
Correct seating position 12
Cruise Control System 107
Cup holders 68

D

DAY LIGHT
see Daylight running lights 54
Daylight running lights 54
dazzle 59
De-icing rear window 58

Deactivation
Airbag 18
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 50
Departure angle 177
Diesel 136
Diesel fuel 136
Diesel particle filter (DPF) 35
Digital Clock 37
Digital Service Plan 131
Dipped beam 53
Dipstick 140
display
cardinal points 36
Display
Coolant temperature 28
Fuel level 28
Gear changes 37
In the instrument cluster 36
MAXI DOT 40
Service intervals 41
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 129
Distance warning 115
Warning light 36
Door
Child safety lock 48
Emergency locking 160
Emergency locking of the driver's door 159
Opening/Closing 47
door alarm 36
Drive
Driving through water 99
DriveGreen 98
driving
emissions 175
fuel consumption 175
Driving
Maximum speed 178
through water 99

E

Economical driving 98
EDL 102
Electric power windows
Malfunctions 52
Electric windows 50
Electric Windows
Button in driver's door' 51
Electronic differential lock (EDL, XDS) 102
Electronic immobilizer 90
Emergency
Hazard warning light system 56
Jump-starting 156, 157
Selector lever-unlocking 160
Starting / stopping the engine with the push of a button 91
Starting the engine / stopping with the push of a button 92
Towing the vehicle 157
Towing the vehicle using the trailer device 159
Tyre repair 154
Unlocking/locking the door 159
Unlocking / locking the door 160
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 150
First aid kit 149
Jack 150
Reflective vest 149
Vehicle tool kit 150
Warning triangle 149
Emergency spare
Removing / stowing 152
Emission control system 31
Emissions 175
Engine
Information messages 34
Running in 98
Engine compartment 137
Brake fluid 142
Coolant 140
Engine oil 139
Overview 138
Vehicle battery 142
Windscreen washer fluid 139
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 101
Engine number 173
engine oil
specification 139
Engine oil 139
Check 140
Oil changing 139
Refilling 140
Warning light 34
EPC 31
ESC
Operation 101
Warning light 30
Extended warranty 5

F

Fastening elements 76
Fatigue detection 116
Films 132
Fire extinguisher 150
First aid kit 149
Flashing 54
Flexible storage compartment 80
Fog lights
Warning light 33
Fog lights/rear fog light 55
Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
Footmats 95
see Footmats 95

Force limiter
Window 52
Front Assist 114
Deactivation/activation 116
Distance warning 115
Malfunctions 116
Operation 114
Radar sensor 100
Warning and automatic braking 115
Warning light 36
Front seats 62
Fuel 135
Diesel 136
Fuel gauge 28
refer to Fuel 135
Refuelling 135
Unleaded petrol 135
Warning light 32
fuel consumption 175
Fuel reserve 32
Fuses 162
in the dash panel 163
in the engine compartment 164, 165

G

Gearbox
Information messages 33
Gear change
Gear recommendation 37
Information on the selected gear 37
Gear changing
Gear stick 95
Genuine parts 128
Glasses compartment 71
GPS
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6

H

handbrake
warning light 29
Handbrake 94
Hazard warning light system 56
HBA 102
Headrests 64
heater
Rear window 58
Heater
Recirculated air mode 88
Heating 85, 86
Mirrors 61
Seats 65
Help in an emergency 8
HHC 102
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 102
hitch 123
Hitch 119
Hooks 77
horn 26

I

I-PAD holder 73
Ignition lock 91
Images
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Immobilizer 90
In an emergency
Changing a wheel 151
Inertia reel 15
Information about the towing process 157
information system
Auto Check Control 36
door alarm 36
Information system 36
Gear recommendation 37
MAXI DOT display 40
Multifunction display 38
Service interval display 41
Infotainment 6
Instrument cluster 27
Warning lights 28
interior light 57
Interior lighting 58
Interior monitor 49
ISOFIX 23

J

Jack 150
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 153
Jump-starting 156, 157

K

KESSY
Unlocking/locking 46
key
Starting / stopping the engine 91
Switch on/off ignition 91
Key
Change battery 159
Locking 45
Unlocking 45

L

Lamp failure
Warning light 35
Lamps
Warning light 35
LEAVING HOME 56
lever
Turn signal/main beam 54
Lever
ACC 111
Cruise control 108
Front Assist 116

Operation of the information system 38
Speed regulating system 109
Windscreen wipers 60
light
Flash 54
Fog lights/rear fog light 55
Light
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 56
Replacing bulbs 165
Turn signal/main beam 54
Lighting
Interior lighting 57
Luggage compartment 75
Lights 53
Abroad 57
Automatic driving light control 55
Cockpit 57
Daylight running 54
Dipped beam 53
Fog lights with the CORNER function 56
Hazard warning light system 56
Headlight cleaning system 60
Headlight range control 53
Parking lights 53, 56
Switching on and off 53
Warning lights 28
Load 175
Lock
Individual settings 47
Locking
Central locking button 46
in case of emergency 160
KESSY 46
Key 45
Remote control 45
Lock steering lock 90
Luggage compartment 75
Cover 78
Fastening elements 76
Fixing nets 76
Flexible storage compartment 80
Lighting 75
Net partition 79
Storage compartments under the floor 80
unlock manually 160
Unlock the boot lid 160
Variable loading floor 81
Luggage compartment cover 78
Other positions 78
Roll-up cover 79
Luggage Storage
bike carriers 82
Roll-up cover 79
Storage compartments 77

M

Main beam 54
Warning light 33
Manual air conditioning
Controls 86
Recirculated air mode 88
Manual gear changing
see Gear changing 95
Materials defect liability 4
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 40
MAXI DOT display
assist systems menu item 41
Audio menu item 40
Main menu 40
Navigation menu item 40
Operation 38
telephone menu item 41
Maximum speed 178
MCB 103
Mechanical window lifter
open/close 51
Mechanical windows 50
Media
AUX 67
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
USB 67
Memory 39
Mirror 61
Vanity 59
mobility warranty 5
Modes of the automatic transmission 96
Modifications and technical alterations 127
MSR 101
Multi collision brake (MCB) 103
Multifunction display
Data 39
Functions 38
Memory 39
Multifunction pocket 77
Multifunction steering wheel 38
Multimedia holder 70

N

N1 80
Nameplate 173
Navigation
S Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Net partition 79
Nets 76

O

oil
see Engine oil 140
Oil
Information messages 34
Oil changing
Engine oil 139
Onboard computer
see multifunction display 38
Operating weight 174

Original accessories 128
overview
cockpit 26
Overview
Engine compartment 138
Fuses 162
Warning lights 28

P

Parking 94
Parking aid 103
Reversing camera 105
Parking aid 103
Automatic system activation when moving forward 105
Function 103
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 105
Display in the Infotainment display 104
Parking lights 53
Parking the vehicle
see Parking 94
ParkPilot 103
Parts replacement 127
Passive safety
Before every journey 10
Driving safety 10
Passive Safety 10
Pedals 95
Footmats 95
Petrol 135
Pockets 73
Pockets in the luggage compartment 77
Power steering 30
Practical features
Pockets 73
Storage compartment for umbrella 72
storage compartment under the passenger seat 72
Waste container 68
Preheating unit 31

R

Radio
See Owner´s Manual - Infotainment 6
Raise vehicle 153
Rear fog light 55
Warning light 31
Rear seats 63
Rear View Camera
Function keys 106
Operation 106
Orientation Lines 106
Rear view mirror 61
Rear window - heater 58
Recirculated air mode 88
Refilling
Coolant 141
Engine oil 140
Windscreen washer fluid 139
Reflective vest 149
Refuelling 135
Fuel 135
Regulation
Headlight beam 53
remote
Synchronization process 48
Remote
Change battery 159
Remote control
Unlocking/locking the vehicle 45
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 122
bar ball, Step 2 122
Repairs and technical alterations 127
Replacing
Bulbs 165
Fuses 162
Windscreen wiper blades 161
Rev counter 27
Reversing camera 105
Rims 145
Roller blind
Luggage compartment cover 79
Roof
Load 84
Roof rack 84
Running in
Brake pads 93
Engine 98
Tyres 145

S

SafeLock 47
safety
air bag 16
Safety 10
Child safety 20
Child safety seats 20
Correct seated position 10
Headrests 64
ISOFIX 23
TOP TETHER 24
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 47
Saving electrical energy 98
Saving fuel 98
SD card
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Seat belt
height adjustment 14
Warning light 33

Seat belts 13
Belt tensioners 15
fastening and unfastening 14
Seatbelts
Inertia reels 15
Seat belts
Warning light 29
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 62
front 62
Front armrest 63
Headrests 64
Heating 65
Rear 63
Rear seat 64
Rear seat backrests 63
Setting 62
Seats and headrest 62
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 27
Selector lever 96
Selector lever control 96
Selector lever lock
Warning light 33
service 127
Service
Service interval display 41
Warning light 36
Service intervals 129, 130
Service Plan 131
Setting
Headrests 64
Mirror 61
Seat belt height 14
Seats 62
Setting the
Clock 37
Set to
lower position of the variable loading floor 81
upper position of the variable loading floor 81
shifting
Tiptronic 97
SmartGate
connection using Wi-Fi direct 43
Connection via Wi-Fi 42
introductory information 42
Password/PIN code change 43
Setting 43
SmartLink
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Snow chains 148
sockets
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 70
12-volt socket in the interior 70
Sound
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Spare wheel 147
Removing / stowing 152
Speed limiter 108
Warning light 33
Speed regulating system
Warning light 33
Speed symbol 147
Spoiler 128
Stabilisation system 101
Stability Control (ESC) 101
START-STOP 92
Jump-starting 157
Manually deactivating/activating the system 93
operation 92
Warning light 35
START-STOP system 92
Start engine
Immobilizer 90
Starter button
Lock / unlock the steering lock 90
Problems with the engine start 92
Starting / stopping the engine 91
Switch on/off ignition 91
Starting engine
Jump-starting 156
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 157
Key 91
Starter button 91
Steering lock (KESSY system)
Warning light 30
steering wheel
Correct posture 11
Steering wheel
Buttons 38
setting 11
Stopping
see Parking 94
Stopping the engine
Key 91
Starter button 91
Storage 66
storage compartment
Glasses compartment 71
under the passenger seat 72
Storage compartment
in the doors 67
in the front arm rest 71
in the front centre console 67
in the rear centre console 73
on the dash panel 68
on the front passenger side 71
on the side of the front seat 72
Storage compartments 66
sun visor 59
Sun visors 59
Switch
Car battery 144
Switching the lights on and off 53
Switch off
Alarm 49
Switch off ignition 91
Key 91

Switch on ignition 91
Key 91

T

Tablet holder 73
Tailgate 50
TCS
Deactivate/activate 102
Function 102
Warning light 30, 31
TCS - off
Warning light 31
Technical data 173
Telephone
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Ticket holder 66
Time 37
Tiptronic 97
Tools 150
TOP TETHER 24
Towing 159
Towing a trailer 125
Towing away 157
Towing device
Accessories 123
Description 119
Vertical load 119
Towing eye 158
Towing protection 49
Towing the vehicle 157
Traction control (TCS) 30, 102
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 123
Load 124
Loading 124
Towing a trailer 125
Trailer towing 119
Transport
Luggage compartment 75
Roof rack 84
Towing device and trailer 119
Transporting children 20
Triangle 149
Turn signal 54
Turn signal system
Warning light 32, 33
Tyre load capacity 147
Tyre pressure 146
Warning light 32
Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 117
Tyre pressure monitoring 117
Warning light 32
Tyre repair 154
Tyres 145
damage 145
Explanation of the label 147
new 145
Tyre pressure 146
Wear indicator 146
Tyre size 147

U

Umbrella
Tray 72
Unlock
Individual settings 47
Unlocking
Central locking button 46
In case of emergency 159
KESSY 46
Key 45
Remote control 45
Unlocking and locking 44
Unlock steering lock 90
USB 67
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 129
Useful equipment
Clothes hook 72
Cup holders 68
Glasses compartment 71
Multimedia holder 70
Useful features
Storage compartment 66
Useful Features
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 70
12-volt socket in the interior 70
Ashtray 69
Cigarette lighter 69
Coin and card holders 67
Pockets 73
Reflective vest 149
Ticket holder 66

V

Variable loading floor 81
Vehicle battery
Automatic shutdown of consumers 142
Charging 144
Safety instructions 142
Warning light 34
Vehicle Condition
see Auto Check Control 37
Vehicle data sticker 173
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 173
Vehicle dimensions 176
Vehicle height 176
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 173
Vehicle length 176
Vehicle tool kit 150
Vehicle width 176
Vest 149

VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 173
Visibility 58
Visors 59
Voice control
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6

W

Warning at when speeding 39
Warning display low temperature 35
Warning lights 28
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 28
Warning triangle 149
Warranty 4
Waste container 68
Weather conditions 127
Weights 173, 174, 175
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 153
Caps 152
Loosening and tightening 153
Wheels 145
Full trim 152
Load Index 147
Snow chains 148
Speed symbol 147
Tyre age 145
Tyre damage 145
Tyre pressure 146
Tyre storage 145
Unidirectional tyres 145
Winter tyres 148
Wi-Fi 42
See Owner´s Manual -Infotainment 6
Wi-Fi direct 43
window
operation 50
Windscreen washer fluid
Refilling 139
Warning light 35
Windscreen washer system 59
Windscreen wipers and washers 59
Activation 60
Add fluid 139
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 162
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 161
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 161
winter operation 148
Winter operation
All-year tyres 148
Car battery 143
Diesel fuel 136
Snow chains 148
Winter tyres 148
Winter tyres 148
Wiper and washer
activation 60
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 35
Wiping interval 60

X

XDS 102

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2016

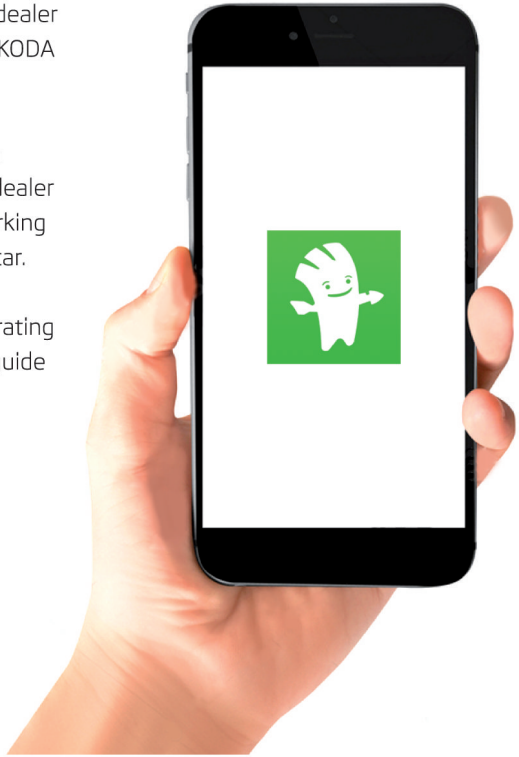
My ŠKODA App – ŠKODA personal assistant in your pocket

My ŠKODA App is provided for smartphones with Android or iOS systems. Its principal task is to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road. With its notification functionalities, the app also will advise its user not to miss important events.

My dealer – Select your preferred dealer and read about its latest offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use Last Parking Position Prediction to locate your car.

My car – Access the complete operating instructions and User's Manual, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Get notifications about your car, traffic and weather from PAUL (Personal Assistant U Love). Use Smart Wake Up to make it to your appointments on time.

- Choose an event to attend
- Check when you must leave according to your location and estimated travel time
- Get a graphical overview between start and end points
- Receive notification about changing conditions as your travel is ongoing

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android

GET IT ON Google play

Available on the App Store

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Fabia anglicky 11.2016
S58.5610.07.20
6V0012720AF

